NATUROPATHY AND HERBAL MEDICINE

Asha. K
Pande Milind Sharad

BOOKS ARCADE

Naturopathy and Herbal Medicine

Naturopathy and Herbal Medicine

Asha. K
Pande Milind Sharad

BOOKS ARCADE
KRISHNA NAGAR, DELHI

Naturopathy and Herbal Medicine

Asha. K
Pande Milind Sharad

BOOKS ARCADE

Regd. Office:
F-10/24, East Krishna Nagar, Near Vijay Chowk, Delhi-110051
Ph. No: +91-11-79669196, +91-9899073222
E-mail: info@booksarcade.co.in, booksarcade.pub@gmail.com
Website: www.booksarcade.co.in

Year of Publication 2023

International Standard Book Number-13: 978-81-19199-54-9

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

USES OF HERBAL REMEDIES IN CANCER THERAPY

Asha.K, Assistant Professor
Department of Life Science, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- k.asha@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

It is becoming more widely accepted that medicinal plants and the phytocompounds derived from them are effective adjunct therapies for cancer. Many clinical studies have shown the positive benefits of herbal treatments when combined with conventional medications on cancer patients' survival rates, immune system function, and quality of life (QOL). In this paper, we provide a quick overview of a few clinical study examples that looked at the use of herbal treatments for different malignancies and the creation of randomized controlled trials (RCTs) in this newly developing field of study. The biochemical and cellular processes of herbal medicines in certain tumor microenvironments are also discussed, as well as the possible use of particular phytochemicals in cell-based cancer vaccine systems. Finally, we provide results from current research on these topics.

KEYWORDS:

Clinical Trials, Herbal Medicine, Herbal Treatments, Lung Cancer, Vaccine.

INTRODUCTION

Therapeutic Applications of Herbal Drugs with Anticancer Properties Many clinical trials have shown that different herbal medications may exhibit a variety of anticancer effects. According to their suppressive effects on certain cancer types, we have categorized and grouped the therapeutic usage of a variety of herbal medications in this area.

Breast Cancer

While a definitive function in the prevention of breast cancer has not been shown, certain anticancer actions have been demonstrated in vitro for vitamins and selenium. In a controlled experiment, 2972 individuals with aggressive or noninvasive breast cancer were randomly assigned to receive either no treatment or 200 mg of a vitamin A formulation (Fenretinide) daily. Premenopausal women saw a substantial decrease in the recurrence of local breast cancer at 97 months after treatment (HR: 0.65; 95% CI: 0.46-0.92). No discernible change in metastasis or total survival time, however, could be shown. Surprisingly, several research have shown that prolonged vitamin E intake may actually harm breast cancer patients. In addition, if individuals follow a balanced and nutritious diet, their rule seems to produce malabsorption or maldigestion in cancer patients with a concurrent disease [1].

The two types of phytoestrogens are lipophilic lignans and water-soluble isoflavones. Soybeans contain a lot of isoflavones, whereas lignans are present in linseeds, wheat, fruit, flaxseeds, and vegetables. Just one of the six relevant clinical studies that have been done so far came to the conclusion that isoflavone was linked to a lower risk of breast cancer. People often advise using phytoestrogens produced from soy to relieve postmenopausal symptoms in breast cancer patients on tamoxifen. The main components of soy bean plant extracts, such as the isoflavones genistein and daidzein, have structural similarities to 17-estradiol and may have negligible estrogenic effects. Unfortunately, there is no proof to back up claims that using phytoestrogens will cure breast cancer or lessen climacteric symptoms.

Traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) research has identified a variety of antibreast cancer drugs, albeit the majority of their mechanisms of action are still unclear. Six categories may be used to group these TCM herbs with antibreast cancer properties: alkaloids, coumarins, flavonoids and polyphenols, terpenoids, quinone, and artesunate. Several of these phytochemicals have well-known chemical structures, such curcumin and artemisinin. These substances have been used as dietary supplements or health foods for many years. For general public usage or particular therapeutic uses, evidence-based in vivo investigations and clinical trials are still advised.

For Prostate Cancer

Because prostate cancer has a protracted latency period, a significant dietary influence, and few effective treatment options for the advanced disease, many patients seek out complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) in the hope that these treatments will provide a viable therapeutic option without potentially harmful side effects. This legendary concept, which is deeply held in many Asian cultures, requires comprehensive, evidence-based study to support it. Vitamins, especially vitamins A-D and retinoids, are chemical molecules that cannot be manufactured by humans and must be eaten to maintain homeostasis and avoid different metabolic illnesses. Recent research suggests that inflammation may play a significant part in the development of prostate cancer. Many clinical studies have looked at the effects of vitamins' anti-inflammatory properties on the development of prostate cancer. Patients who have been diagnosed with prostate cancer often utilize vitamin and mineral supplements, despite the lack of strong evidence to support their usage. It is thought that these supplements could at least not hurt people while perhaps preventing or treating diseases linked to inflammation. Daily intake of more than 100 IU of vitamin E was shown to reduce the incidence of fatal or advanced prostate cancer in smokers by 56% compared to nonusers. Nevertheless, a selenium and vitamin E chemoprevention experiment that examined whether vitamin E and/or selenium supplementation may lower prostate carcinogenesis revealed that taking vitamin E supplements statistically increased the incidence of prostate cancer in healthy males. Combined, these clinical findings imply that vitamin E treatment for prostate cancer patients could only be targeted at reducing inflammation-related symptoms rather than anticancer action. Further research is required to resolve this apparent discrepancy between effects in cancer and healthy populations [2].

The usage of the term "seattle" refers to the city of Seattle, Washington. Many polyphenols, such as isoflavones, are phytoestrogens that may bind to estrogen receptors and have an estrogenic impact on the tissues or organs they are intended to affect. Some specific compounds, in particular the four active polyphenolic compounds in green tea, epicatechin, epigallocatechin, epicatechin-3-gallate, and epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG), the soy isoflavones, as well as Scutellaria baicalensis, β-carotene, and the lycopenes have all been studied for their effect on prostate carcinoma . Although the effect was attained at a much higher concentration than the serum levels detected in humans who drank moderate amounts of green tea, it was shown that EGCG in green tea can arrest LNCaP and DU145 prostate cancer cells at the G0-G1 phase of the cell cycle and inhibit metalloproteinase in vitro.

One patient in a Phase II trial using green tea for the treatment of males with metastatic androgen-independent prostate cancer saw a PSA response of >50% that persisted for almost one month. Nevertheless, the patients in this trial had significant poisoning symptoms, including diarrhoea, nausea, and exhaustion. Researchers came to the conclusion that green tea offers just a little amount of anti-androgen-independent prostate cancer-fighting effect, as measured by a drop in PSA levels. It has been shown that the soy isoflavones block the action of the enzyme 5-reductase, which transforms testosterone into the more powerful androgen

dihydrotestosterone. Soy isoflavones have also been examined for their potential therapeutic benefits as chemopreventive agents in a number of pre-clinical randomized investigations. Baicalin, a flavone glycoside that prevents the enzymatic production of eicosanoids important mediators of inflammation and prostate tumor cell proliferation is present in extremely high concentrations in Scutellaria baicalensis. A flavone called baicalein reduces the growth of androgen-independent PC-3 and DU145 prostate cancer cells in culture and, at dosages that are safe for people, causes cell-cycle arrest in the G0-G1 phase and apoptosis. At physiologically feasible dosages, baicalein significantly reduced the expression of a particular androgen receptor in prostate cancer. While most studies on lycopenes have employed mixes of tomato products, the link between lycopene consumption and a lower risk of prostate cancer has caused researchers to concentrate specifically on lycopene's usage and effects. As patients were having prostatectomy surgery for locally advanced prostate cancer, Chen and colleagues looked at the impact of lycopene levels and indicators of oxidative damage. They discovered that following dietary intervention, oxidative damage in lymphocytes from these individuals was reduced in comparison to pretreatment levels, and the prostate tissues of treated patients showed considerably lower levels of PSA and less oxidative damage. Further randomized studies are required to evaluate the effectiveness of lycopene in chemoprevention activities since it is still unclear if the impact is caused by lycopene alone or a more complex dietary extract [3].

The herbal extract PC-SPES was first offered for sale as a dietary supplement for "prostate health" in the middle of the 1990s. PC, which stands for "prostate cancer," and "spes," a Latin word meaning "hope," are the roots of the term PC-SPES. This herbal concoction is mostly used to treat prostate cancer. Unfortunately, despite the therapeutic potential of PC-SPES, it was recalled and removed off the market when it was discovered that certain batches of testing PC-SPES samples included prescription medications under the authority of the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA). As far as we are aware, the FDA has not yet authorized the use of PC-SPES in the treatment of cancer. Additional proof and correlated information to establish the in vitro and clinical effectiveness of this herbal blend are required. Wedelia chinensis (Asteraceae), an oriental medicinal plant containing several chemicals such indole-3-carboxylaldehyde, wedelolactone, luteolin, and apigenin, was shown by Lin et al. to be capable of inhibiting androgen action. Moreover, taking W. chinensis extract orally prevented prostate cancer carcinogenesis. Three active chemicals that may block the androgen receptor (AR) signaling pathway were later shown to be responsible for the anticancer activity of W. chinensis extract. It's been a while since I've been this excited about a project. Strong anticolitis activities were produced in test mice as a consequence of these activities. Future research on W. chinensis for chemoprevention or as a supplementary therapy for treating human prostate cancer is necessary.

Lung Cancer

One of the worst malignancies is lung cancer, and tumors from other bodily parts often spread to the lung. Due to the extreme toxicity of the numerous anticancer drugs, including gemcitabine, paclitaxel, docetaxel, etoposide, and vinorelbine, standard chemotherapy regimens often yield little survival advantages. According to recent findings, herbal medications and their phytochemicals, which seem to have reduced or minimal toxicity, may provide an appealing approach to treating lung cancer. Traditionally, herbal plants such as Platycodon grandiflorum (Campanulaceae), Prunus armeniaca (Rosaceae), Morus alba (Moraceae), Rhus verniciflua (Anacardiaceae), Perilla frutescens (Labiatae), Stemona japonica (Stemonaceae), Tussilago farfara (Compositae), and Draba nemorosa (Brassicaceae) have been used to treat lung cancer. Clinically, up to 77% of patients receiving conventional (such as chemotherapy) treatment for lung cancer also take herbal medications as adjuvants. Herbs are

usually utilized in lung cancer to minimize therapy-associated toxicity and cancer-related symptoms and occasionally to directly boost anticancer benefits. The basic basis for using traditional herbal medicines remains empirical proof, case studies, and speculative physiological effects; nonetheless, it is crucial to highlight that certain CAM treatments or therapies may have negative consequences or diminish the effectiveness of conventional therapy [4].

DISCUSSION

While many western doctors strongly disapprove of this practice, many Chinese herbal remedies are used in conjunction with chemotherapy or radiation to increase the effectiveness of cancer treatment and decrease side effects and problems. Hence, awareness of the use of certain herbal remedies as adjuvants to conventional treatment must be improved in collaboration and cooperation with doctors and other healthcare professionals. This section covers evidence regarding usage of herbal medicines as adjuvants to standard drug-based, chemo- or radiation regimens in cancer treatment. On the other hand, this section also outlines the difficulties or restrictions for using certain natural medications in clinical settings [5]. Herbal medicines are often used as adjuvant therapy in chemo- or radiotherapy for cancer

According to reports, between 28% and 98% of ethnic Chinese cancer patients in Asia and 25% to 47% of those in North America employed herbal remedies as part of their treatment. Even if certain herbal remedies have been discovered to be helpful in conjunction with chemotherapy and radiation treatment, the majority of clinical trials and research have been published in China or other Asian nations, if not exclusively, and are seldom ever acknowledged on PubMed. A comprehensive assessment of Chinese herbal remedies used in clinical trials, mostly as adjuvant therapies to lessen the problems and side effects of chemotherapy or radiation, was published in 2010 by Qi and colleagues. Astragalus, Turmeric (curcumin), Ginseng, TJ-41, PHY906, Huachansu, and Kanglaite are a few historically used Chinese herbal remedies that are often utilized by cancer patients to either "cure" cancer or "reduce the toxicity" brought on by chemotherapy or radiation.

According to preclinical and clinical research, these herbal remedies may have many benefits for preventing the spread of tumors by enhancing the sensitivity of chemo- and radiotherapeutics, enhancing immune system activity, and reducing the tissue/physiology damage brought on by these treatments. The majority of research to far, however, have been empirical (i.e., poorly controlled) clinical trials or observations that mostly suggest a decrease in problems and side effects during or after chemotherapy and radiation. Some traditional herbal formulations, including Bojungikki-tang , Kang-Fu-Zhi-Tong , PHY906 , Xiao-Chai-Hu-Tang, Huang-Lian-Jie-Du-Tang, and Yin-Chen-Wu-Ling-San , have been observed, "detected," or "claimed" to protect liver function, reduce cancer-related fatigue and pain, improve respiratory tract infections and gastrointestinal side effects, and even ameliorate the symptoms of cachexia. While these clinical outcomes often do not satisfy the parameters set forth by the US FDA for clinical studies, they may nonetheless provide some insight into the use of herbal medications as adjuvant therapies for cancer. They may also provide helpful guidance for the creation of future plant medicines as main or adjuvant treatments for cancer[6].

Radiation pneumonitis, which is brought on by radiotherapeutic intervention, is one of the main dangers of conventional therapy for patients with lung cancer. Several herbal remedies, including Dixiong Decoction, Liangxue Jiedu Huoxue Decoction, Qingjin Runfei Decoction, and Shenqi Fuzheng injection, have been shown to have positive effects. In groups of NSCLC patients receiving irradiation, it was shown that these herbal preparations considerably reduced the incidence of radiation pneumonitis and improved the Clinical Radiographic Physiologic

(CRP) dyspnea score and the Radiation Treatment Oncology Group (RTOG) grading score. The results of these studies also indicated certain potential side effects and potential use of some herbal medications in combination treatment with conventional chemotherapy. High-powered study of particular herbal medicines and their applications for evidence-based usage in cancer therapy still faces difficulties due to the wide variety and variability of herbal medicine intervention and the resulting effects. To support evidence-based application, high level quality control to ensure consistent batch preparation and systematic pharmacokinetic studies are needed for all tests of herbal medicines' effectiveness against lung cancer. These tests must be conducted not only in human studies but also in experimental animal systems.

Colon Cancer

Because to the limited therapeutic index and intrinsic toxicity of many anticancer treatments, drug interactions are crucial in oncology. Recent research revealed that one of the most crucial elements that may change the bioavailability of orally delivered anticancer drugs that are CYP3A substrates is the activity of cytochrome P450 enzymes (CYP enzymes) in the gastrointestinal wall. Echinacea, kava, grape seed, and St. John's wort (Hypericum perforatum) are among the herbal supplements thought to increase CYP. More thought has to be given to the combination of their usage with anticancer drugs due to the rise in the use of herbal products by cancer patients. It has been shown that administering St. John's wort causes the intestine and liver to produce CYP3A, which is good for the metabolism of irinotecan, a camptothecin derivative that can cause DNA damage when it interacts with topoisomerase. Thus, St. John's wort is experimentally used to treat metastatic colon or rectum malignancy. Recent research using epidemiological modeling have shown intriguing trends that point to the possibility that using herbal remedies as adjuvant therapy may improve prognosis in individuals with advanced colon cancer. An imaginary, dualistic tumor growth and regression model that incorporates immune activation and antiproliferation has been used to illustrate how traditional Chinese medicine works to treat metastatic cancer.

Additional Cancers

Throughout the last two decades, a variety of Chinese herbal remedies have been highlighted for their radiosensitization and radioprotection effects during irradiation of malignancies, including bone cancer as well as head and neck tumors . According to Cho and Chen, combining TCM with radiation not only improved treatment results for nasopharyngeal cancer patients, but also their functional condition. Su and colleagues consistently discovered that Guliu capsules (GLC) coupled with Sr-89 offered therapeutic results in the treatment of metastatic bone cancers. The combination use of GLC and Sr-89 was shown to be useful in treating metastatic bone tumors and improving patients' QOF by increasing the pace at which nostalgia was relieved and lowering hemotoxicity. Quan and colleagues also observed that TCM, when combined with radiotherapy or chemotherapy, had an impact on the prevention of tumor development, the length of life, and the improvement of QOL in brain tumor metastases. These results highlight the potential use of TCM in the treatment of various malignancies [7].

Obstacles to Herbal Medication Usage in Cancer Treatment

Although traditional herbal medicines, phytomedicines, medicinal foods, and complementary or alternative medicines have been increasingly used over the past decade in European and North American countries, they seem to have not generated interest or been accepted by mainstream medicine practitioners in western countries, especially in standard care for cancer patients. The absence of evidence-based information and recommendations for the regular and regulatory use of herbal remedies as "drugs" for use in public health has been the main concern for many biomedical professionals. The six main problems that are impeding the application

of phytomedicines are as follows: Lack of definitions and routine preparation of the biochemical/biological components and compositions of herbal medicines or the phytochemicals/phytocompounds derived from medicina; inconsistent and reliable sources of genuine medicinal plant materials; lack of species verification and authentication; cultivation using good agricultural practice protocols; and standard/normalized methods and technology for plant extraction/mixture preparation Without addressing all of the aforementioned problems, we cannot successfully modernize herbal treatments. Although we have comprehensively reviewed a range of laboratory, preclinical, and clinical studies on the potential use of herbal medicines in the treatment of cancer patients, many of these studies did not adhere to the strict guidelines, procedures, and protocol required for the development of western-style drugs or medicinal foods.

It is also vital to remember that the key principle in current western medicine is that a medication should be made of well-known chemical components or a pure single substance that selectively interacts with known and particular molecular target(s) in our body system. Because many clinically used commercial drugs (such as aspirin, doxorubicin, etc.) may actually bind to and act on multiple molecular targets, it is now understood that the search for single molecules that can modify single or highly specific key factors in a disease process is a challenging and occasionally inappropriate strategy. It is known that a variety of cell types, target molecules, and/or signaling pathways participate in a number of illnesses. It is "thus claimed" that herbal extracts and mixtures used to make traditional phytomedicines represent a combinational chemistry and include a wide range of chemical entities that can have a profound and well-balanced medicinal effect on a variety of molecular and cellular components and functions.

Regrettably, such "claims" often directly disagree with the existing recommendations or instructions, according to the current FDA and NIH cancer clinical trial laws in the USA. Hence, the absence of well-defined biological targets is a significant obstacle to the integration of herbal medications into traditional western medicine. Regarding this worry, new data from a variety of omics studies clearly imply that a multifactorial mode of action and multitarget pharmacological activity may already be the "typical" for a variety of presently prescribed therapeutic medications. As we previously shown in a cancer cell line investigation, there may be less of a difference between the complexities of molecular targets sought by single component medications vs complex herbal medicine extracts than was first believed. The "multi-target" method or activity envisioned for diverse herbal medicines may thus turn out to be "rational and intelligible," and as a result, be favorably taken into account and prepared in the creation of botanical drugs. The findings of a set of inconclusive experiments may be usefully interpreted by pooling data from separate trials using a meta-analysis technique[8].

We think the pattern-oriented approach (fingerprint analysis) is a good strategy for achieving this goal because it can assess the integrative and holistic properties of test herbal medicines by comparing the similarities, differences, and correlation of the findings from analyses of the entire production process, including manufacture, processing, and storage of raw materials for preparation, intermediate products, finished products, and distribution products. For the purpose of analyzing herbal medications, Yongyu and colleagues have extensively evaluated fingerprinting techniques. The findings of the fingerprint profiling of therapeutically utilized herbal medicines may be used in future clinical applications as a reference or indicator for quality control of phytochemical content. Moreover, the fingerprinting profiles may be used in conjunction with therapy effectiveness. A recent assessment of randomized controlled clinical trials examined this research methodology.

Additional Anticancer Uses for Certain Herbal Medications

It is now understood that tumor microenvironments are crucial for the development, progression, and metastasis of cancer. During the last several years, intense interactions between tumor or malignant cells and their stromal microenvironments that include a variety of immune cell types have drawn a lot of scientific interest. There has been special attention in the significant relationship between diverse immune activity at or around tumor tissues and the course of tumor growth. It has also been suggested that one of the most important methods for facilitating an anticancer impact is to improve tumor monitoring by the host immune system. The effects of herbal remedies specifically on boosting host immunity are discussed in this part, along with a discussion of their molecular targets in anticancer activity [9].

Herbal remedies as adjuvants for DC-based vaccines

An adjuvant used in conjunction with a vaccination must, by definition, help or encourage antigen delivery and presentation. In the tumor or tissue microenvironment, an adjuvant may also help with the production of cytokines and the stimulation/activation of antigen-presenting cells. It has been claimed that some herbal remedies, such Ganoderma lucidum or Dioscorea tuber, exhibit immunomodulatory properties. Investigations on the immunostimulatory and anticancer effects of bioactive polysaccharides from Ganoderma lucidum (Reishi) were conducted. In mice, a particular polysaccharide fraction from Reishi enhanced immune cell activation, dendritic cell maturation, and cytokine production. It also showed strong adjuvant effect. Toll-like receptor 4-mediated protein kinase signaling pathways were shown to be the mechanism through which Dioscorea batatas polysaccharides induced TNF-secretion. Many phytochemicals have also been shown to significantly improve the anti-tumor effectiveness of cancer vaccines based on genes. Shikonin, for instance, increased the anti-tumor effectiveness of a cancer vaccination by inducing the production of RANTES at the skin immunization tissue site. Moreover, a phytocompound combination derived from the butanol fraction of an extract of the stem and leaves of Echinacea purpurea had immunomodulatory effects, indicating that it might successfully alter DC mobility and associated cellular physiology in vivo in the mouse immune system. These investigations point to a possible use for herbal remedies in a vaccination system based on cells [10], [11].

CONCLUSION

In most human civilizations, numerous plants have been utilized as medicines and illness therapies for years, if not millennia (many of which have been systematized in traditional Chinese medicine). As this review serves as an example, over the past 20 years, renewed public interest and research efforts from scientific and medical communities around the world have produced a significant amount of data, including clinical studies and trials on the pharmacological effects, use, and development into future medicines of herbs and derivative medicinal phytochemicals as anti-tumor and chemoprevention agents. Even if many conventional treatments or combinations of herbs have undergone verification and improvement, systematic, standardized research, the application of FDA regulatory processes, and clearly defined clinical trials are still fairly restricted and need to be aggressively pursued. In order to speed up the discovery process, scientists, clinicians, and regulatory organizations must actively consider how to develop novel, enhanced, or modified clinical surveys, studies, and trial mechanisms that employ the rigorous trial standards of the 21st century while also incorporating, on a global scale, the wealth of historical empirical data that has been gathered by traditional medicine practices globally.

REFERENCES:

[1] L. Ye *et al.*, "Traditional Chinese medicine in the prevention and treatment of cancer and cancer metastasis (Review)," *Oncology Letters*. 2015. doi: 10.3892/ol.2015.3459.

[2] N. A. Jaradat, R. Shawahna, A. M. Eid, R. Al-Ramahi, M. K. Asma, and A. N. Zaid, "Herbal remedies use by breast cancer patients in the West Bank of Palestine," *J. Ethnopharmacol.*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.jep.2015.11.050.

[3] A. Molassiotis *et al.*, "Use of complementary and alternative medicine in cancer patients: A European survey," *Ann. Oncol.*, 2005, doi: 10.1093/annonc/mdi110.

[4] B. R. Cassileth and G. Deng, "Complementary and Alternative Therapies for Cancer," *Oncologist*, 2004, doi: 10.1634/theoncologist.9-1-80.

[5] A. Thapliyal, R. K. Khar, and A. Chandra, "Overview of cancer and medicinal herbs used for cancer therapy," *Asian Journal of Pharmaceutics*. 2018.

[6] A. Karimi, M. Majlesi, and M. Rafieian-Kopaei, "Herbal versus synthetic drugs; beliefs and facts.," *J. nephropharmacology*, 2015.

[7] M. S. Ali-Shtayeh, R. M. Jamous, N. M. Y. Salameh, R. M. Jamous, and A. M. A. Hamadeh, "Complementary and alternative medicine use among cancer patients in Palestine with special reference to safety-related concerns," *J. Ethnopharmacol.*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.jep.2016.04.038.

[8] S. A. Mosaddad *et al.*, "Therapeutic applications of herbal/synthetic/bio-drug in oral cancer: An update," *European Journal of Pharmacology*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2020.173657.

[9] K.- Chun Cheng, Y.-X. Li, and J.-T. Cheng, "The Use of Herbal Medicine in Cancer-related Anorexia/ Cachexia Treatment Around the World," *Curr. Pharm. Des.*, 2012, doi: 10.2174/138161212803216979.

[10] B. Jaikumar and R. Jasmine, "A review on a few medicinal plants possessing anticancer activity against human breast cancer," *International Journal of PharmTech Research*. 2016.

[11] S. Ustündag and A. D. Zencirci, "Complementary and alternative medicine use among cancer patients and determination of affecting factors: A questionnaire study," *Holist. Nurs. Pract.*, 2015, doi: 10.1097/HNP.0000000000000113.

CHAPTER 2

TREATMENT FOR VASCULAR DEMENTIA USING HERBAL MEDICINE

Uzma Noor Shah, Assistant Professor
Department of Life Science, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- ns.uzma@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

There are currently no authorized pharmacological treatments for VaD, and traditional anti-AD medications only provide moderate, temporary relief from the symptoms of VaD. As herbal remedies have a multicomponent and multitarget approach, they may provide effective treatments for VaD. Herbal remedies have been used for millennia to address dementia-like symptoms. With a focus on Chinese herbal medicine, this review aims to provide an up-to-date assessment of the present state of herbal medicine research for the treatment of dementia or VaD. A case study is also offered to show how a brand-new, standardized, complicated herbal formulation for VaD was developed. The study offers some early data in favor of using simple and sophisticated herbal remedies for dementia and VaD. Future research directions are reviewed along with a number of challenges related to clinical and preclinical research that have been found.

KEYWORDS:

Cerebrovascular, Disease, Herbal Medicine, Pharmacological, Vascular Dementia (VAD).

INTRODUCTION

Dementia is a condition linked with gradual deficits in memory and learning capacity, cognitive abilities, conduct, activities of daily living, and quality of life. More than 47.5 million individuals worldwide suffer from dementia, and 7.7 million new cases are added to the pool every year. Almost 353,800 individuals in Australia now live with dementia, and it is predicted that figure will reach 900,000 by the year 2050. Cerebrovascular disease and lung cancer have been eclipsed by dementia as the second top causes of mortality in Australia [1]. Vascular dementia (VaD), the second most prevalent form of dementia after Alzheimer's disease, is one of several varieties of dementia (AD). Parkinson's disease, dementia with Lewy bodies, frontotemporal dementia, Huntington's disease, and dementia brought on by alcohol use are a few further frequent types of dementia.

The 10-15% of dementia cases in western nations are caused by VaD, which is linked to cardiovascular and cerebrovascular illnesses. In developing nations, the prevalence of VaD is greater, accounting for roughly 30% of the dementia prevalence, which is largely owing to worse management of cardiovascular risk factors. Other types of dementia, including AD, often coexist with VaD. Moreover, postmortem investigations show that the most prevalent form of mixed dementia, AD type neurodegenerative disease, is present in over 40% of clinically diagnosed VaD patients. The most effective medications for treating AD at this time are glutamate receptor antagonists and cholinesterase inhibitors. The safety and long-term therapeutic advantages of these therapies in VaD are yet unknown, while these drugs have also been used off-label in several nations to treat the symptoms of patients with VaD.

Many persons with dementia or VAD and their caregivers resort to alternative medicine when conventional medication is ineffective. Herbal remedies, acupuncture, nutraceuticals, yoga, tai

chi, and music therapy are typical alternative medicine treatments for dementia and dementia risk reduction. In ancient China, where herbal treatments were used to improve memory and lengthen life, the use of herbal medicine for the treatment of age-related illnesses is well recorded in the literature. There is preliminary preclinical and clinical data to support the use of herbal remedies as simple or complex herbal formulations for VaD. With a focus on Chinese herbal medicine for the treatment of the condition, this review paper attempts to offer an updated summary of the evidence to support some of the regularly used herbs and herbal combinations. A case study is offered to show the creation process of a new complex herbal formulation for VaD that makes use of contemporary pharmaceutical and pharmacological technology. Problems and concerns related to herbal medications are highlighted.

The main symptom of VaD is cognitive impairment, particularly executive dysfunction, which may also affect mood and behavior and lower quality of life. Vascular dementia (VaD) is classified as large vessel dementia (multiple infarcts or multi-infarct dementia), small vessel dementia (small vessel disease and microinfarction), strategic infarct dementia (SID), hypoperfusive dementia (HPD), dementia associated with angiopathies (hypertension, amyloid), hemorrhagic dementia (HD), and familial vascular dementia (FVD) [2].

The primary risk factors for VaD include high blood pressure, high cholesterol, diabetes, genetic predisposition, heart disease, inactivity, and obesity. VaD's pathophysiology is intricate. It takes into account interactions between cerebral vascular illnesses and vascular variables, as well as changes to the brain (infarcts, white matter lesions, and atrophy), host factors (age, education), and vascular aetiologies. The last common aetiopathogenic route often links a hypoxic, hypoperfusive, or occlusive process to ischemic damage in multiple brain regions and consequent deficits in cognitive and memory function (Figure 1). VaD formation is also influenced by other pathogenic variables including as AD, amyloid deposition, aging, and atherosclerosis via inflammation and oxidative stress.

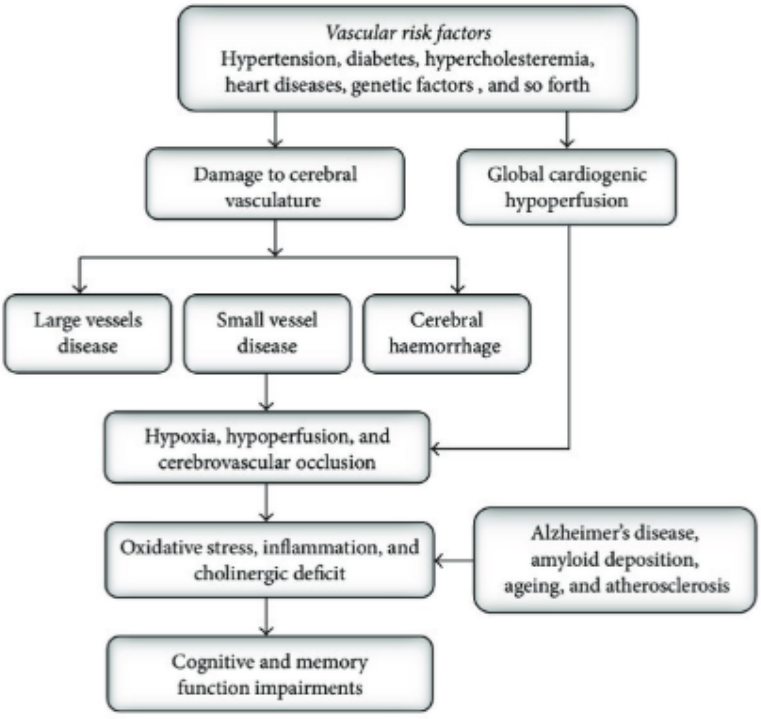

Figure 1: Explain the pathophysiological processes that lead to vascular dementia.

The standard of care generally focuses on symptomatic therapy and preventing further brain injury by identifying and managing cardiovascular and cerebrovascular risks, such as those caused by aspirin, high blood pressure, and diabetes, as well as by vascular care. Many kinds of anti-AD pharmacological drugs are utilized off-label for symptomatic therapy in VaD. Cholinesterase (ChE) inhibitors (donepezil, galantamine, and rivastigmine) and NMDA receptor antagonists (memantine) have demonstrated some modest short-term clinical benefits in improving cognitive function, but the majority of these studies have failed to show significant improvements in overall functioning, daily activities, and quality of life. As the majority of trials done thus far have only lasted 5–6 months or less, the durability and safety of these VaD treatments have not been established[3].

DISCUSSION

Complicated Herbal Preparations

Mechanisms and Synergistic Outcomes

In several ancient medicinal systems, many plants are often blended in intricate formulas to treat a variety of ailments. Theoretically, this multicomponent and multitarget strategy may be most suited for treating ailments like VaD that have complicated etiologies and pathophysiologies.

In TCM, the utilization of multiherbal treatments in which up to 20 herbs are employed supports its distinctive philosophy and holistic approach. TCM theories state that a complex herbal composition based on the concept of "Jun (emperor) - Chen (minister) - Zuo (assistant) - Shi (courier)" contains a variety of plants. The "Jun" herb is the key therapeutic component of the formula directly targeting the disease, the "Chen" herb is included to relieve the accompanying symptoms of the disease and/or to enhance the effects of the key herb, the "Zuo" herb reduces toxicity of the herbal formula, and the "Shi" herb facilitates the delivery of active components of the formula to the target organs and/or harmonises their effects.

According to the Jun-Chen-Zuo-Shen hypothesis, a complex herbal formulation's ingredients work together synergistically to improve dispersion and/or mitigate/prevent harmful negative effects. Pharmacological explanations may be used to explain some of these relationships. For instance, interactions between bioactive ingredients in herbal formulations increase their solubility and subsequently bioavailability, allowing them to reach a variety of therapeutic targets related to the illness and/or to improve metabolism of harmful ingredients, decreasing side effects.

There is relatively little proof that these positive relationships exist, and the conclusions are still debatable. The absence of reliable research approaches to examine the synergistic effects of multicomponent herbs or herbal formulations contributes to the dearth of evidence. The isobole technique and the combination index (CI) are the two approaches that are most often used to explore synergism. These approaches need the establishment of a dose-response relationship between the combination and each of its constituent parts in order to identify whether two or more single-entity medicines operating on the same target/receptor will interact synergistically or antagonistically. These techniques, however, fall short when it comes to assessing synergy in complex herbal compositions where several components interact with numerous therapeutic targets or receptors [4].

In order to better understand multitarget synergistic activities, systematic analysis, also known as the system-to-system (S2S) technique, is being used more often. The S2S technique combines data from literature and experimental investigations by using computational

sciences. S2S analysis is carried out by a docking procedure, in which computer software compares the three-dimensional structures of particular compounds of interest to the known structures of significant therapeutic protein targets linked to the illness. The application of the S2S approach in the study of complicated herbal formulations remains challenging due to the general lack of knowledge about the chemical and pharmacologic characteristics of many herbal medicines' bioactive components.

Clinical Support for Complicated Herbal VaD Formulations

The clinical data that is now available to support the use of complex herbal formulations for dementia and/or VaD is still inconclusive and debatable. There aren't many studies that look at the efficacy of complicated herbal formulations for VaD that have been released in English. For instance, the benefits of Bai Wei Di Huang Wan, a traditional Chinese herbal preparation made up of eight Chinese herbs, were investigated in 33 patients with moderate to severe dementia in a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled experiment. Despite the fact that the authors did not define the specific kinds of dementia, it is probable that VaD or mixed dementia affected 91% of the individuals enrolled according to MRI indications of cerebrovascular illness. As compared to the placebo, the authors discovered that an 8-week therapy with the Bai Wei Di Huang Wang formula considerably improved cognitive function (as evaluated by the MMSE) and ADL (as measured by the Barthel Index). The innovation time was rather brief, and the testing was not completely powered. These findings need to be confirmed by longer-term investigations with bigger sample numbers [5].

An open-label trial involving 13 individuals with VaD according to the National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke-Association Internationale pour la Recherche et l'Enseignement en Neurosciences (NINDS-AIREN) diagnostic criteria examined the effects of the seven-herb Kampo/Chinese medicine formula Yokukan-san (Yi-Gan San in TCM) on neurocognitive function and behavioral and psychological symptoms. Atractylodes lancea rhizome, Bupleurum radix, Poria sclerotium, Glycyrrhizae radix, Cnidium rhizome, and Uncarie hook make up Yokukan-san. Yokukan-4-week san's therapy did not substantially alter his MMSE scores, but it did significantly alter his total NPI (neuropsychiatric inventory) score and mean subscores for agitation and disinhibition. This suggests that the formula may have neuropsychiatric advantages.

In order to assess several sophisticated Chinese herbal formulations for the treatment of VaD, many experiments were carried out in China. In an attempt to evaluate the effectiveness and safety of herbal treatments for VaD, a systematic review published in 2012 described 47 randomised controlled clinical trials (all carried out in China) comprising 3,725 persons with the disease (using various diagnostic criteria). In 37 of the 43 investigations where herbal treatments were employed as monotherapies, compared to placebos or conventional drugs (such as piracetam, aniracetam, hydergine, etc.), the benefits of the herbal interventions were shown to be considerably stronger. As comparison to conventional medications used alone, the usage of herbal medicines in combination with conventional medications produced improved neurocognitive efficacy results in all 4 investigations. Nevertheless, major methodological flaws were found in these studies, including the use of several outcome measures, inconsistent diagnostic criteria, different baseline characteristics, and no estimate of sample size (some studies used instruments developed in-house). These investigations also made use of around 43 distinct herbal/complex herbal treatments. The relevance of these clinical results is significantly impacted by each of these methodological flaws.

A more recent meta-analysis by Gong et al. included 24 randomised clinical trials with 2043 people with VaD (all conducted in China), but no analysis of the VaD diagnostic criteria used

in these studies was provided. This meta-analysis used strict inclusion criteria (e.g., exclusion of studies using single herbs or with short duration). As compared to placebos or piracetam (used in 10 research), sophisticated Chinese herbal therapies substantially improved cognitive function (as measured by MMSE scores) (in 3 studies). In 17 of the investigations, there was no change in MMSE ratings between hydergine and Chinese herbal remedies. Yet, in 5 of the investigations, herbal medicine treatments improved ADLs more than piracetam treatments did. Having stated that, these investigations found comparable methodological issues as the earlier systematic reviews.

In conclusion, a variety of intricate herbal formulations have undergone clinical testing, mostly in China. The majority of these clinical studies had many methodological issues. Moreover, no research mentioned the uniformity of the herbal therapies they utilized in the trials. There are also a dearth of mechanistic studies to assess the mechanisms of action and synergy of these formulations.

Clinical Research into SLT

A phase 1 research of SLT was undertaken in 54 volunteers for assessment of tolerance and safety. The following adverse effects were noted in the single administration research (60-540 mg/dose, 30 participants): stomach discomfort, occurrence of urticaria, local skin pain, diarrhoea, itchy skin, dry mouth, heartburn, abdominal distension, dizziness, and nausea. The percentage of these adverse events did not significantly vary between the treatment group and the placebo group, however. Moreover, there was no relationship between adverse event distribution and dosage. 24 healthy volunteers were randomly assigned to receive either a low dosage of SLT (180 mg/day) or a high dose (300 mg/day) therapy, or similar doses of placebos, over the course of 14 days in the continuous administration trial. The incidence rate of adverse events did not significantly vary between the continuous treatment group and the placebo group. There were no detectable abnormalities in the liver, kidney, or ECG associated with SLT therapy. Overall, the study's findings demonstrated the safety and tolerability of SLT[6].

The impact of a 1-week course of SLT therapy on neurocognitive and cardiovascular performance in 16 healthy persons was evaluated using a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover approach. [7] Treatment with SLT led to a tendency in favor of improvement as compared to placebo in electrical brain activity during the encoding of attended information in memory and in neuropsychological tests of working memory (immediate recall and N-back tasks) (nonsignificant increase in P3a amplitude and significant decrease in N1 amplitude). The research indicated that short-term SLT therapy is related with more effective attentional processing of auditory information and enhanced activation of working memory processes, indicating that SLT has the potential to improve working memory performance in healthy individuals [8]–[10].

CONCLUSION

Another issue with the current studies is the lengths of the treatments. Due to the chronic nature of dementia, longer-term clinical studies are necessary to properly evaluate how therapies affect the disease's progression. According to the European Medicines Agency's recommendations for medicinal treatments for AD and other dementias, controlled clinical studies proving short-term improvement in AD and VaD must last at least 6 months and 12 months, respectively. Future studies should preferably look for improvements in ADL, overall clinical improvement, quality of life, neuropsychiatric symptoms, and caregiver burden in addition to cognitive skills.

There aren't many mechanistic studies that evaluate the synergistic effects of various herbs or multiple active ingredients. This is mostly brought on by the absence of reliable tools to assess synergy. Thus, there is an urgent need for greater study in this field. Chinese herbal therapy, in particular, has been used extensively to address a number of risk factors, including diabetes, atherosclerosis, and hypertension that are linked to cardiovascular disease and VaD. Unfortunately, there were no research found that examined utilizing herbal remedies to prevent VaD. Many research testing the conversion of moderate cognitive impairment to Alzheimer's disease utilizing long-term ginkgo therapy came up empty.

In conclusion, the evidence that is now available to support the use of both simple and complicated herbal remedies is encouraging but still needs to be strengthened. The trial design in clinical investigations of herbal remedies for dementia and VaD has a number of problems. The case study presented here highlights the viability and possibility of creating herbal medications for the treatment of VaD that are based on scientific facts.

REFERENCES:

[1] X. Qin *et al.*, "A meta-analysis of Chinese herbal medicines for vascular dementia," *Neural Regen. Res.*, 2013, doi: 10.4103/1673-5374.121694.

[2] L. Zeng *et al.*, "Can Chinese Herbal Medicine Adjunctive Therapy Improve Outcomes of Senile Vascular Dementia? Systematic Review with Meta-analysis of Clinical Trials," *Phytotherapy Research*. 2015. doi: 10.1002/ptr.5481.

[3] "Efficacy and Safety of Qi Zhi Tong Luo Capsule in Vascular Cognitive Impairment," *Case Med. Res.*, 2020, doi: 10.31525/ct1-nct04301466.

[4] G. Z. Steiner *et al.*, "A systematic review of intervention studies examining nutritional and herbal therapies for mild cognitive impairment and dementia using neuroimaging methods: Study characteristics and intervention efficacy," *Evidence-based Complementary and Alternative Medicine*. 2017. doi: 10.1155/2017/6083629.

[5] F. Wang, Y. Shen, H. Pei, W. D. Rausch, and H. Li, "Dissection of the mechanism of shenmayizhi decoction treatment of vascular dementia based on network pharmacology," *Acta Medica Mediterr.*, 2021, doi: 10.19193/0393-6384_2021_4_359.

[6] K. Terasawa *et al.*, "Choto-san in the treatment of vascular dementia: A double-blind, placebo-controlled study," *Phytomedicine*, 1997, doi: 10.1016/S0944-7113(97)80022-0.

[7] B. H. May *et al.*, "Herbal medicine for dementia: A systematic review," *Phytotherapy Research*. 2009. doi: 10.1002/ptr.2656.

[8] H. J. Park, H. S. Shim, K. S. Kim, and I. Shim, "The protective effect of black ginseng against transient focal ischemia-induced neuronal damage in rats," *Korean J. Physiol. Pharmacol.*, 2011, doi: 10.4196/kjpp.2011.15.6.333.

[9] S. Yamaguchi, M. Matsubara, and S. Kobayashi, "Event-related brain potential changes after Choto-san administration in stroke patients with mild cognitive impairments," *Psychopharmacology (Berl).*, 2004, doi: 10.1007/s00213-003-1593-9.

[10] NCT01847924, "NEURoaid II (MLC 901) Assessment in Cognitively Impaired Not Demented Subjects," *https://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT01847924*, 2013.

CHAPTER 3

HERBAL ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AGENTS FOR SKIN DISEASE

Asha.K, Assistant Professor
Department of Life Science, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- k.asha@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Herbs have been used in clinical medicine for thousands of years. But it has only been recently that we have been able to use scientific approaches to demonstrate the effectiveness of many of these herbs and to improve our understanding of how they work. This paper will focus on the use of herbs in various dermatological conditions characterized by inflammation and pruritus. Topical preparations of many of these herbs are more commonplace in Europe. However, their availability is increasing in the US. While this is developing we are seeing a rising marriage between alternative and orthodox therapies.

KEYWORDS:

Diseases, medicine, pro-inflammatory enzymes, and pathogens.

INTRODUCTION

The largest and most varied organ in the human body is the skin. Overall skin condition is vital not only for the cosmetic reasons, but also because of health. The patient's psychological state is impacted by its unfavorable appearance due to dermatitis, and both of these factors are crucial to the development and management of chronic skin diseases. The skin, which is the largest organ in the body, consists of several layers, including the epidermis, dermis, and hypodermis. The skin plays an important role by conferring protection and acting as a barrier to the body. It also regulates body temperature and facilitates sensation. Skin diseases or disorders are the most prevalent skin-related concern. In fact, one in three adults over the age of 18 have a mild or chronic skin condition, and 50% of adults have experienced some form of skin disorder at some point in their lives. According to Kassab et al,2 skin disorders remain one of the biggest challenges that affect the quality-of-life of adults and teenagers alike [1].

Skin

The skin, which is the largest organ in the body, shields the internal organs from a variety of external threats, including foreign pathogens, exogenous physical stress, chemicals, and others. Additionally, it is crucial for controlling temperature, electrolytes, water, and other factors, and it gives the body essential vitamins like Vitamin D. Unlike to other mucosal epithelia, skin has a tough, dry covering of epithelia that blocks easy access for microbe entrance. Despite other routes of pathogen entry, the skin plays an important role in protecting from pathogens. In addition, skin cells create a variety of chemicals, including fatty acids and defensins, to eliminate pathogens. As a result, skin is made up of three main layers that each contain a variety of cells, including immune cells that serve a variety of purposes. Because the skin contains so many immune niches, it is known as the "skin immune system," "tertiary lymphoid structures," or "tertiary lymphoid organs."

Pathogens, toxic mechanical and chemical agents, and autoimmune responses can all cause inflammation, which is a complicated process by which the body repairs tissue damage and

protects itself from harmful stimuli. Inflammation is characterized by such symptoms as redness, swelling, itching, heat, and pain. Under the influence of an inflammatory factor, some intracellular biochemical substances are released from cells. Monocytes and macrophages produce cytokines. The fundamental function of cytokines in inflammatory processes includes, but is not limited to, activating inflammation-related cells, facilitating communication between them, inducing the production of prostaglandins, and influencing the production of C-reactive proteins. Among cytokines one can distinguish pro-inflammatory and anti-inflammatory ones. The first type predominates, which causes a systemic inflammatory response, while the anti-inflammatory cytokines predominate, which causes an anti-inflammatory response [2].

Eicosanoids such as prostaglandins, prostacyclins, thromboxanes, and leukotrienes, mediators produced in response to stimuli from arachidonic acid connected with the cell membrane in the form of phospholipids, are also involved in the regulation of inflammatory processes and cellular response. As a result of abnormalities in inflammatory processes and excessive production of pro-inflammatory mediators like IL-1, IL-6, TNF-, and PGE2, which set off an inflammatory reaction cascade, chronic inflammatory diseases develop. The manufacture of eicosanoids in the epidermis is also disrupted in the course of skin inflammatory illnesses, and the neuroimmunological system is unstable, leading to increased production of neurotransmitters like P substance, which drives the synthesis of nitrogen oxide.

One of the typical inflammation-based diseases is atopic dermatitis, which is a chronic disease affecting people genetically inclined to overreact to external factors. Excessive skin dryness and itching, exfoliation, redness, skin irritation, exudations, swelling of the affected skin areas, spots, rash, and blisters with watery secretions are the most frequently seen symptoms of atopic dermatitis. Staphylococcus aureus is being observed to colonize skin. Atopic dermatitis has a very complicated history, and we still don't fully understand all of its causes. It is claimed that during the onset and in the course of the disease, the most important are the genetic factors and influence of the external environment.

A complex interaction between numerous cells, including keratinocytes, endothelium cells, eosinophils, Langerhans cells, and T lymphocytes, as well as numerous cytokines and mediators, results in an immunological mechanism that is important in the pathogenesis of atopic dermatitis and other inflammatory skin diseases. In atopic skin diseases, atopic dermatitis and psoriasis, skin cells produce interleukins initiating inflammatory reactions. In patients, excessive production of specific antigens IgE against low doses of food and inhalant allergens, which are responsible for the development of the inflammation, is observed. As a result of releasing the leukotrienes, prostaglandins and proteases, inflammation symptoms occur in different organs and systems. Excessive skin dryness, characteristic of atopic dermatitis, is related to the change of activity of Δ6-desaturase an enzyme catalysing transformation of the linolenic acid into the γ-linolenic one.

Essential fatty acid levels are low and lipid production in the epidermis is abnormal in patients with this disease, which is important for the development and maintenance of dermal changes. In patients suffering from atopic dermatitis, an increased value of TEWL is observed, which may be related to a lowered concentration of lipids in skin, especially that of ceramides, and the loss of ingredients of a natural moisturizing factor NMF. In treatment of atopic dermatitis, plant raw materials with anti-inflammatory properties and ability to regulate the synthesis of lipids in epidermis are utilized. The most important among them, demonstrating both mechanisms of action, is an internally applied oenothera oil. Raw materials applied externally during treatment of atopic dermatitis, effectiveness of which results from their anti-inflammatory activity, are camomile head, hamamelis water, hamamelis leaves and St John's wort [3], [4].

The paper presents results of the study regarding the anti-inflammatory activity of the plant raw material related to its influence on the skin. Medicinal plants used in treatment of dermatitis, atopic dermatitis, eczema, furunculosis and other inflammatory diseases of the skin are described. The process of inflammation involves the release of vasoactive mediators and chemotactic factors such as histamine, leukotrienes, proinflammatory prostaglandins and lymphokines. These substances are responsible for the capillary dilation and increase in permeability, resulting in swollen, inflamed tissues [5].

Turmeric

Many herbs have demonstrated anti-inflammatory activity. Turmeric, the major ingredient of curry powder and prepared mustard, has a long history in both Chinese and Ayurvedic medicine as an anti-inflammatory agent. The volatile oil fraction of turmeric has demonstrated potent antiinflammatory activity in a variety of experimental animal models, while curcumin, the yellow pigment of turmeric is even more potent in acute inflammation1. When used orally, curcumin inhibits leukotriene formation, inhibits platelet aggregation and stabilizes neutrophilic lysosomal membranes, thus inhibiting inflammation at the cellular level2. Curcumin is reported to possess greater anti-inflammatory activity than ibuprofen3. At low levels, curcumin is a prostaglandin inhibitor, while at higher levels it stimulates the adrenal glands to secrete cortisone4. Formulation difficulties due to the yellow color of curcumin has made topical use slow in coming. However, recent developments in technology may change that. The standard oral dose of curcumin is 250-400 mg, three times a day [6].

Licorice Root

Licorice root has been used for centuries to treat inflammatory and viral diseases. The active part of the root contains glycyrrhizin, at concentrations ranging from 7-10%. It is converted to glycyrrehetic acid in the body. This herb has been used extensively in Europe as an anti-inflammatory agent, and in Japan as an antiviral agent with success in treating chronic hepatitis. It has been shown to inhibit the activity of proinflammatory prostaglandins and leuktrienes, and appears to have a cortisone-like effect making it useful as an anti-inflammatory. In one study the effects of topical corticosteroids were significantly enhanced by the addition of 2% GA7. Another study reported that the use of topical ointments containing active isomers of GA exerted anti-inflammatory activity in a number of subacute and chronic dermatoses8. When compared, topical corticosteroids were superior in the treatment of acute atopic dermatitis. However, GA was superior when treating chronic conditions such as contact dermatitis, seborrheic dermatitis, psoriasis and other conditions characterized by inflammation and pruritus8. Although topical preparations are not available in the US, compresses can be prepared by adding 3 gm of the extract in 150 ml of water. Orally, the dosage depends on the form in which it is taken. In powdered root form, the dose is 1-4 gm daily. In fluid extract form, the dose is 1 tsp before meals and as a solid extract, the dose is 1/2 tsp before meals. Generally speaking, although herbs have far fewer side effects, they do exist and caution must be exercised in patients with hypertension when using oral licorice root. Elevations in blood pressure have been reported. Much smaller doses, or none at all, should be used for patients with cardiac or renal histories [7].

Bromelain

Bromelain, a mixture of proteolytic enzymes from the stem of the pineapple plant, has demonstrated anti-inflammatory activity in a wide variety of conditions. It appears to inhibit the production of pro-inflammatory prostaglandins, induce production of antiinflammatory Series 1 prostaglandins, and reduce capillary permeability[9]. Bromelain is quite useful postoperatively as an agent to speed healing and reduce postsurgical pain and swelling.

Chamomile

Chamomile refers to two distinct plants. Matricaria recutita is known as German or Hungarian chamomile, and Chamaemelum nobile is known as Roman or English chamomile. Although the plants are not identical, they are used for the same types of conditions. The active constituents of chamomile include the terpenoids and flavenoids. Studies have documented the antiinflammatory and soothing effects of creams containing chamomile in patients with various inflammatory dermatoses. It is often used in a variety of cosmetic products and as soothing compresses [8].

DISCUSSION

Aloe Vera

The use of aloe as a medicinal can be traced back to 333 BC, and there are over 180 aloe species identified. It is widely used for the treatment of burns and wounds. The active component is a polysaccharide that forms a protective and soothing coating when applied to the skin. The ability of aloe to accelerate wound healing was demonstrated in a study with patients who had fullface dermabrasion. Aloe vera was also found to be effective in the treatment of psoriasis and it has been used as a biologically active vehicle for certain ingredients.

Calendula

Calendula, derived from the marigold plant, is quite widely used in topical skin and hair preparations as a soothing ingredient. Its anti-inflammatory effects are a result of triterpene flavonoids and saponins. It has been used topically as an antiseptic agent and applied to poorly healing wounds [9].

Capsaicin

Capsaicin inhibits substance P, a peptide transmitter involved in pain transmission, cutaneous vasodilation, and the inflammatory process. Capsaicin has also been found to be effective in the treatment of plaque-type psoriasis. It is worth noting that the first few applications of topical capsaicin often result in burning and stinging. These symptoms diminish with continued use. However, in both studies noted, the dropout rate was significant due to these reactions.

Other Anti-Inflammatory Herbs

Walnut leaf, extracted from the dried leaves of the English walnut, contains ellagitannins, whose astringent properties can be soothing to weeping lesions when used as compresses. There are many other topically applied antiinflammatory herbs that are used mostly in Europe and Asia, such as mallow, wild pansy, and fenugreek seeds that contain several anti-inflammatory saponins.

Bioflavenoids

The bioflavenoids, including quercetin and hesperidin, inhibit histamine release and mast cell degranulation, and support capillary integrity. Quercetin inhibits phospholipase A2 and lipoxygenase enzymes. This results in the inhibition of proinflammatory prostaglandins and leukotrienes.

Essential Fatty Acids

The essential fatty acids are those fatty acids that are not synthesized or are poorly synthesized by humans. Historically, a diet rich in land animal fats results in much higher levels of arachidonic acid with a concomitant increase in proinflammatory prostaglandin synthesis.

Conversely, a diet rich in fish will have the opposite effect, increasing anti-inflammatory prostaglandins. Several studies demonstrate marked clinical improvement in atopic patients using dietary supplementation with either eicosapentanoic acid, or gamma-linoleic acid. The most effective fatty acids include EPA, docosahexanoic acid from fish oils, and GLA from plant oils such as borage, black currant, and evening primrose, since they bypass the desaturation enzyme steps. It generally takes several months of fatty acid supplementation before improvement is noted. There are anecdotal reports about the application of evening primrose oil to chapped, irritated skin, leading to clinical improvement and healing [10]–[12].

CONCLUSION

As our familiarity with herbal ingredients increases and we employ our known scientific methodology to study them physiologically, our ability to treat patients satisfactorily, with fewer side effects will be enhanced. Many more herbs are being studied for their therapeutic as well as preventative roles in traditional medicine, thus narrowing a gap that has been present for many years.

REFERENCES:

[1] J. Graf, “Herbal anti-inflammatory agents for skin disease.,” Skin Therapy Lett., 2000.

[2] H. J. Li, N. L. Wu, C. M. Pu, C. Y. Hsiao, D. C. Chang, and C. F. Hung, “Chrysin alleviates imiquimod-induced psoriasis-like skin inflammation and reduces the release of CCL20 and antimicrobial peptides,” Sci. Rep., 2020, doi: 10.1038/s41598-020-60050-1.

[3] J. B. Xavier-Santos et al., “Development of an effective and safe topical anti-inflammatory gel containing Jatropha gossypiifolia leaf extract: Results from a pre-clinical trial in mice,” J. Ethnopharmacol., 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.jep.2018.09.007.

[4] A. Almasian, F. Najafi, M. Eftekhari, M. R. Shams Ardekani, M. Sharifzadeh, and M. Khanavi, “Preparation of Polyurethane/Pluronic F127 Nanofibers Containing Peppermint Extract Loaded Gelatin Nanoppapers for Diabetic Wounds Healing: Characterization, in Vitro, and in Vivo Studies,” Evidence-based Complement. Altern. Med., 2021, doi: 10.1155/2021/6646702.

[5] S. K. Sharma and I. Rahat, “Oregano Derived Anti-Bacterial Hand Sanitizer: Formulation and Characterization,” J. Pharm. Res. Int., 2021, doi: 10.9734/jpri/2020/v32i3931025.

[6] A. Kazmi, M. A. Khan, and H. Ali, “Biotechnological approaches for production of bioactive secondary metabolites in Nigella sativa:¬ an up-to-date review,” Int. J. Second. Metab., 2019, doi: 10.21448/ijsm.575075.

[7] A. Marchiani, C. Rozzo, A. Fadda, G. Delogu, and P. Ruzza, “Curcumin and Curcumin-like Molecules: From Spice to Drugs,” Curr. Med. Chem., 2013, doi: 10.2174/09298673210213120611581O.

[8] R. Dianita and I. Jantan, “Ethnomedicinal uses, phytochemistry and pharmacological aspects of the genus Premna: A review,” Pharmaceutical Biology. 2017. doi: 10.1080/13880209.2017.1323225.

[9] S. K. Bhullar and H. S. Buttar, “Perspectives on nanofiber dressings for the localized delivery of botanical remedies in wound healing,” AIMS Materials Science. 2017. doi: 10.3934/matersci.2017.2.370.

[10] E. Amjad, B. Sokouti, and S. Asnaashari, “A hybrid systems biology and systems pharmacology investigation of Zingerone’s effects on reconstructed human epidermal tissues,” Egypt. J. Med. Hum. Genet., 2021, doi: 10.1186/s43042-021-00204-6.

[11] J. H. Lee et al., “Chijabyukpi-Tang Inhibits Pro-Inflammatory Cytokines and Chemokines via the Nrf2/HO-1 Signaling Pathway in TNF-α/IFN-γ-Stimulated HaCaT Cells and Ameliorates 2,4-Dinitrochlorobenzene-Induced Atopic Dermatitis-Like Skin Lesions in Mice,” Front. Pharmacol., 2020, doi: 10.3389/fphar.2020.01018.

[12] S. E. Jin et al., “Traditional herbal formula banhasasim-tang exerts anti-inflammatory effects in RAW 264.7 macrophages and HaCaT keratinocytes,” Evidence-based Complement. Altern. Med., 2015, doi: 10.1155/2015/728380.

CHAPTER 4

USE OF ALTERNATIVE MEDICINE AS A PROLIFERATION

Uzma Noor Shah, Assistant Professor
Department of Life Science, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- ns.uzma@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Herbal medicine is one of the primary branches of traditional medicine; a variety of medicinal plants and their particular components are employed for treatment. While not supported by science, this kind of traditional medicine is very well-liked in many South, Southeast, and Eastern Asian nations, including India, China, and Sri Lanka, mostly because of its therapeutic properties. Scientists started analyzing the chemical composition of these therapeutic plants more recently, and the findings were beneficial. Studies on the impact of herbal extracts on various kinds of stem cells are the most recent contribution to these findings. This chapter provides a thorough description of such published findings, primarily classifying them as having proliferation-stimulatory effects on stem cells and inhibitory effects on cancer stem cells, both of which are advantageous in cell therapy processes.

KEYWORDS:

Differentiation, Herbal Extracts, Stem Cell Treatment, Proliferation, Cancer Stem Cells.

INTRODUCTION

Due to patient claims of therapeutic action, traditional medicine is a common treatment option for a variety of ailments in many nations. Traditional medicine is built on information that has been passed down from generation to generation going back to ancient times; as a result, treatment procedures differ depending on the nation and area of origin. Also, multiple traditional medical practices may be used in one area owing to the many ethnic origins of its residents who have immigrated from other parts of the globe. According to the World Health Organization, "Traditional medicine is the sum of the knowledge, skills, and practices based on the theories, beliefs, and experiences indigenous to different cultures, whether explicable or not, used in the maintenance of health as well as in the prevention, diagnosis, improvement, or treatment of physical and mental illness".

No matter the type of traditional medicine being practiced, including Indian traditional medicine, Sri Lankan traditional medicine, traditional Chinese medicine, Arabic traditional medicine, African traditional medicine, and South American traditional medicine, herbal medicine is one of the main streams. The WHO states that herbs, herbal materials, herbal preparations, and finished herbal products that contain active ingredients as parts of plants or other plant materials or combinations are among the medicinal components of herbal medicine. Additionally, 75% of the world's population uses herbs for their basic healthcare requirements. Ancient texts like Arkaprakasa and Kumaratantra, which are said to have been written by the great king Ravana of Sri Lanka, also provide evidence that the use of herbal medicine dates back more than 5000 years. These texts also describe various herbal preparations that were used to treat and manage various diseases. Petrovska examines a detailed description of historical occasions relating to the usage of herbal remedies. Different plant-based treatments for the same ailment may be used in various nations, relying mostly on the local plant species and traditional knowledge that have been passed down through the generations for thousands of years [1].

Despite the fact that history has consistently backed up the use of herbal therapy, Western medical professionals have questioned traditional wisdom and its efficacy throughout the last century owing to a lack of empirical evidence to support these assertions. Nevertheless in the recent decades, opinions on herbal therapy had been shifting into favorable beliefs with the isolation of many distinct useful medications from plant components. The majority of currently available synthetic medications need to be replaced since they are unstable in vivo and are thus very costly. Constant synthetic medication dosages may have adverse effects and toxicity; as a result, these drawbacks hastened the search for natural product-based substitutes. The development of multi-screening drug facilities to research certain therapeutic activities was made feasible by technology advancements in fundamental and health sciences.

The primary source of current pharmaceutical medications, which are either natively derived or synthesized equivalents of already-existing natural molecules, is isolated chemicals and bioactive compounds from plant sources. Anticancer medications, antidiabetic pharmaceuticals, and skin care products continue to rank at the top of the extensive list of authorized drugs made from herbal material. 49% of the antidiabetic medications licensed in the previous 10 years were plant derived, as were 25% of the cancer therapies utilized in the last 20 years that were directly derived from plant material.

Obesity is becoming a socioeconomic burden in both emerging and wealthy nations, making citizens throughout the world unwell and increasing the risk of numerous non-communicable illnesses. Due to the popularity of the goods among consumers, there are several weight-reducing supplements made from herbal extracts that are selling at an increasing rate in the local marketplaces, even without clinical clearance. Due to the fact that antiobesity herbal treatments would develop as multimillion dollar industries on the worldwide market, research is now being done in this area [2].

Prior to conducting clinical trials, it is crucial to employ experimental platforms to examine the various activities of plant-derived extracts. One such experimental platform for examining the therapeutic effects of plant extracts in vitro is human stem cells. The use of stem cells as a trustworthy research tool has been widely acknowledged by scientists all around the world.

These cells have the capacity to self-renew and differentiate into a variety of cell lineages. In research, bone marrow stem cells have been used frequently because of their well-understood characteristics. However, due to advantages like low ethical concerns, high availability, and simple isolation techniques, the paradigm for using stem cells is shifting to umbilical cord- and cord blood-derived stem cells.

Since stem cells are capable of multi-lineage differentiation, treatments for many illnesses may be studied using induced differentiation of stem cells. Human mesenchymal stem cells, for instance, have the ability to differentiate into osteocytes, adipocytes, and chondrocytes.

As a result, herbal extracts may be used to examine in vitro the suppression or stimulation of adipogenic, osteogenic, and chondrogenic differentiation properties of stem cells and, as a result, the therapeutic potential of diseases associated with the aforementioned cell lineages. As human haematopoietic stem cells are the source of blood tissue's cells, they may be differentiated into various blood cell types, and herbal extracts can be employed in the way described above to look for therapeutic solutions for problems involving blood cells.

DISCUSSION

Prior to conducting clinical trials, it is crucial to employ experimental platforms to examine the various activities of plant-derived extracts. One such experimental platform for examining the therapeutic effects of plant extracts in vitro is human stem cells. The use of stem cells as a trustworthy research tool has been widely acknowledged by scientists all around the world. These cells have the capacity to self-renew and differentiate into a variety of cell lineages. In research, bone marrow stem cells have been used frequently because of their well-understood characteristics. However, [3] due to advantages like low ethical concerns, high availability, and simple isolation techniques, the paradigm for using stem cells is shifting to umbilical cord- and cord blood-derived stem cells. Since stem cells are capable of multi-lineage differentiation, treatments for many illnesses may be studied using induced differentiation of stem cells. Human mesenchymal stem cells, for instance, have the ability to differentiate into osteocytes, adipocytes, and chondrocytes. As a result, herbal extracts may be used to examine in vitro the suppression or stimulation of adipogenic, osteogenic, and chondrogenic differentiation properties of stem cells and, as a result, the therapeutic potential of diseases associated with the aforementioned cell lineages. As human haematopoietic stem cells are the source of blood tissue's cells, they may be differentiated into various blood cell types, and herbal extracts can be employed in the way described above to look for therapeutic solutions for problems involving blood cells [4].

Public health problems and worries about the safety of herbal medical goods are becoming more widely acknowledged as their usage throughout the world increases and a large number of new products are released into the market. While many herbal treatments have not been researched and are still in use, some of them show intriguing promise and are extensively utilized. This makes it more difficult to identify the safest and most effective treatments and to encourage the sensible use of them since we know so little about their possible negative effects. It is also well known that the majority of herbal medicines' safety is further jeopardized by a lack of effective quality standards, poor labeling, and a lack of pertinent patient information. Hence, it is now crucial to provide the general public, including healthcare professionals, with sufficient information to help them better comprehend the dangers involved with using these goods and to guarantee that all medications are secure and of the right caliber. Consideration in this study is restricted to toxicity-related problems and serious safety concerns originating from the use of herbal medications as well as factors supporting them. To assist concentrate relevant regulatory bodies on the need for efficacy, proper public health protection, and safety promotion, certain significant problems related to effectively monitoring the safety of these herbal treatments are also addressed.

Factors Responsible For Improved Patronage and Self-Medication with Herbal Medicine

Herbal treatments essentially consist of fragments of plants or unpurified plant extracts with a variety of ingredients that are often thought to interact synergistically. The recent resurgence of public interest in herbal remedies has been attributed to a number of factors, some of which include I varying claims regarding the efficacy or effectiveness of plant medicines, consumers' preference for natural therapies and an increased interest in alternative medicines, the false notion that herbal products are superior to manufactured products, dissatisfaction with the outcomes from conventional pharmaceuticals, and the notion that herbal remedies are less expensive than conventional medicines [5].

The increasing use of herbs for self-medication by patients or individuals is also attributed to a number of other reasons, including I patients' discomfort with discussing their medical issues

and concern over lack of confidentiality in handling their health information, patients' concern over potential misdiagnosis and wrong treatment by patients with non-specific symptoms or general malaise, and patients' lack of time to see a doctor; this is typically a reason where priority is placed on seeing a doctor as soon as . Also, patients' freedom of choice in a doctor is encouraging them to choose complementary therapies and herbal cures, albeit many choose these treatments based on anecdotal evidence, i.e., "it worked for my friend or family" . In addition, due to the impact of religion and rising spiritual awareness, many people are becoming more likely to embrace the therapeutic efficacy of a course of action based on faith or intuition rather than on scientific evidence. So, herbal remedies take on a special allure when the body's inherent ability to heal itself is highlighted under the right circumstances.

These items have been significantly projected into larger spotlight by numerous herbal medicine producers' and their sales representatives' marketing tactics and efforts in addition to all of the aforementioned elements. Many ads in the media, such as those on television and radio, have greatly raised consumer awareness and given herbal goods an excessive amount of legitimacy and credibility. To appeal to the many age groups prevalent in the society, these adverts are thoughtfully prepared. Young people are encouraged to use herbs for their euphoric effects, to supply essential ingredients to help them cope with daily stress, to prevent or delay the onset of aging, older people for their anti-aging or rejuvenating effects, and women for slimming and beauty enhancing effects. Children are encouraged to use herbs for their nutritional values to facilitate normal or healthy growth and development [6].

Influence of Regulatory Policies on Safety of Herbal Medicines

It has been noted that the designation of many of these items as foods or dietary supplements in various countries is the primary cause of the majority of the issues related to the use of traditional and herbal medicines. As a result, before to sale, no proof of the quality, effectiveness, or safety of these herbal medications is needed. In a similar vein, manufacturing standards and quality checks are often less stringent or monitored, and conventional healthcare providers may not always be qualified or certified. The safety of traditional and herbal medicines has consequently become a significant concern to both national health agencies and the general public. Up until 2011, a customer in the UK may get a herbal product through one of three legal channels. The most popular option is an unregistered herbal treatment, which is exempt from quality and safety requirements as well as consumer safety disclosure requirements. In order to support the general public in making educated decisions regarding the use of herbal products, the European Union recently implemented a directive after a 7-year transition period to harmonize the regulation of traditional herbal medicine products across the EU and establish a simplified licensing system.

Similar to conventional medications, approved herbal medications are subject to quality, safety, and effectiveness standards. So, for safe usage, they must be accompanied with detailed information such as warnings, instructions, how to use the product, adverse effects, storage instructions, and regulatory information. Usually, a booklet put inside the product packaging contains this information. On the other hand, certain herbal medications cannot receive a license to market these items since there is inadequate proof of repeatable effectiveness to fulfill regulatory criteria. Because to this, a new category of traditional herbal registration was created, with a seven-year transition period. The Traditional Herbal Medicines Registration Program, a "simplified registration scheme," was launched in the UK in response to this. According to this plan, herbal medicines must adhere to strict safety and quality requirements, accept use guidelines based on its historical application, and give information in a booklet to encourage the buyer's safe use of the product. Unfortunately, this is not the situation in many other regions of the globe, notably in the developing nations where numerous unregistered and

poorly regulated herbal products are marketed freely on the market with little or no constraint. Additionally, the widespread belief that natural goods are not poisonous and have no side effects often encourages incorrect usage and uncontrolled consumption, which has also led to serious poisoning and immediate health issues. This false belief does not just exist in poor nations. It also occurs in highly industrialized nations, where people often turn to "natural" items without having enough knowledge of or access to information on the hazards involved, especially in the case of excessive or long-term usage.

Toxicity and Adverse Health Effects Of Some Common Herbal Medicines

The majority of nations do not require any safety or toxicological testing prior to the introduction of herbal medications and associated goods to the market. Several of these nations also lack efficient equipment to control production standards and procedures [7]. It is crucial to emphasize the astounding pace of growth in both interest in and usage of herbal medicines. In China during the last ten years, the use of herbal medicines has made up around 40% of all healthcare services provided, compared to estimates of the population's usage of herbal medicines in Australia, Canada, the United States, Belgium, and France of 48%, 70%, 42%, 38%, and 75%, respectively. Despite patients' positive opinions of using herbal remedies and their purported satisfaction with therapeutic results, along with their dissatisfaction with conventional allopathic or orthodox medicines due to their lack of efficacy and/or safety, the issue of herbal remedies' safety continues to be a major source of worry.

The widespread belief that herbal medications or treatments are very safe and free of side effects is not only false but also deceptive. It has been shown that a variety of unfavorable or unpleasant responses may be produced by herbs, some of which can result in fatal or life-threatening diseases, severe injuries, or even death. Poisoning instances have been recorded in the literature in large numbers and with absolute certainty. An unpublished case report of a young male adult who had been using the herbal product Yoyo "Cleanser" Bitters® for self-medication and was later admitted to the hospital due to liver failure served as the impetus for the recent toxicity evaluation of this polyherbal formula that was carried out in our laboratory. Yoyo "Cleanser" Bitters® is one of the herbal treatments that is frequently publicized in the different Nigerian media and as such has achieved so much public acceptability over time and continues to enjoy greater patronage among customers, particularly in the southwestern portion of the nation.

Our research showed that after 30 days of treatment to rats, this herbal remedy was capable of increasing plasma levels of liver enzymes and causing hypokalemia. We saw that the risk linked with this herb during this sub-acute exposure or toxicity trial was increased potassium loss, which has the potential to predispose to harmful arrhythmias. Almost ten years ago, we conducted an experimental model research to assess the safety of mixes of "super B blood purifier" and "super B seven keys to power". A recognized Nigerian business that produced therapeutic herbal concoctions and grew medicinal plants sold these herbal combinations. The manufacturer's assertion that "they are safe, offer strength, and cleanse the blood and body of illness" supports the widespread use of the herbal blood tonics by regular people. Entandrophragma utile and Anacardium occidentalis were collected, and we looked at both the individual plant extracts and the herbal tonics manufactured from them. Despite the fact that all of the extracts and tonics were found to be safe during an acute toxicity trial, mice given E. utile or either of the two tonics showed 10% of them to have enlarged spleens and one instance of lung tumor. In a recent research conducted in Uganda, Auerbach et al. found a link between the usage of traditional herbal medicines and the development of liver fibrosis in study participants [8], [9].

Herbal extracts' inhibitory effects on cancer stem cells

Cancer stem cells, which can self-renew and generate a diverse lineage of cancer cells, have emerged as the most challenging problem in cancer treatment. Studies have shown that isolated phytochemicals including luteolin, genistein, piperin, -carotene, and sulforaphane may reduce the amount of cancer cells in the body. Other isolated phytochemicals that have been shown to do this include curcumin, resveratrol, lycopene, luteolin, and genistein. In particular, the phytochemical sulforaphane, derived from broccoli, displayed apoptosis-inducing effects on pancreatic CSCs and could successfully target breast CSCs. Yet, in this situation, scientists are altering their strategy in the hunt for natural goods by attempting to choose herbal extracts and preparations recognized in traditional medicine as being useful against malignancies. This approach would be advantageous for both ends of traditional medicine and modern therapeutics, as traditional medicine will have a chance of proving the remedies in a scientific platform and also the modern therapeutics would have the benefit of using time tested anticancer remedies rather than screening thousands of plant extracts for this purpose without any clues. Many strategies for herbal remedies acting on CSCs have been described in a review on targeting CSCs utilizing TCM remedies and their active components. The described mechanisms of TCM treatments targeting CSCs include reversing CSC drug resistance, triggering cell death and decreasing cell growth, inhibiting metastasis, and targeting CSCs-related miRNAs.

When human breast CSCs were transplanted into naked mice, berberine liposomes, which were isolated from the rhizome of Coptis chinensis, demonstrated anticancer effects by penetrating the cell membrane, accumulating in the mitochondria of the CSCs, and reversing drug resistance as well as the apoptotic pathway, which causes cell death and inhibits cell proliferation. By downregulating stemness genes and driving differentiation of these cells into non-stem cells, curcumin and epigallocatechin gallate have synergistically targeted breast CSCs. By decreasing the activity of the LEF-1/TCF responsive receptor, quercetin, derived from Dysosma veitchii, and EGCG together have been shown to inhibit the metastasis of prostate cancer. Through controlling miR-141/ZEB2 signaling, hokool, a lignan derived from Magnolia officinalis, reduced kidney carcinoma metastasis. The p53-independent proliferation inhibition and apoptosis induction are two actions that reveal triphala's anticancer capabilities on human colon cancer stem cells. Another study on the anticancer activities of gedunin, a key component of Azadirachta indica, verified the plant's ability to induce apoptosis in human embryonal carcinoma cells, a cancer stem cell model [10].

The benefits and drawbacks of employing herbal treatments to activate stem cells

A simple way to establish the connection between plant/herbal medicines and their usage in treating various ailments is via traditional herbal therapy. The same method is being employed by contemporary scientists to locate herbal plants and the separated substances they contain that may be used as stem cell stimulants for urgently required stem cell therapy treatments. Studies in this field of inquiry were started in both industrialized and developing nations that were building their own traditional herbal medicine expertise. With its use of isolated chemicals and traditional Chinese herbs together with cutting-edge screening technology, China seems to be well ahead in this hybrid approach of study. While there is a variety of globally published research by research organizations from China, many clinical trials and small population studies appear to be disguised from the rest of the world since these findings are published in local journals in their original language.

In this exercise, China is not acting alone. The similar problem exists in other nations like Iran and Pakistan, who have vibrant traditional medical traditions and are also engaged in stem cell

research, since their findings are not shared with the global scientific community. This unfortunate situation could be improved to be more productive through international research collaboration. In certain cases, developing nations partner with industrialized nations to gain cutting-edge technology in order to reach high prospective outcomes in their study. They do this by sharing their expertise in traditional herbal medicine as well as their rich local plant variety. This fruitful collaborative research framework, however, had been limited by the stringent local regulations and policies on shipping indigenous plant material or their compounds in developing countries, in order to protect their own plant species, as this process is time-consuming and would cause the late initiation of laboratory investigations [11].

Another issue is the traditional herbalists' refusal to share information about their herbal medicines with scientists for research, despite the fact that it is the latter who can demonstrate scientifically that these treatments are in fact therapeutically effective. Families are reported to pass down traditional methods from generation to generation, and the majority of these practitioners provide free care to patients as a social service. Some practitioners maintain that their use of this medication yields adequate results, thus they have no need to divulge their herbal medicines, which have been kept a family secret for many generations. Modern traditional medicine graduates, on the other hand, are more interested in scientifically verifying their treatment approaches since doing so would help their practice compete with Western medicine practitioners.

According to the practice of "personalized/precision medicine," the majority of traditional medicine practitioners alter the herbal preparations' ingredients and dosages, sometimes even for the same condition, based on the patient's unique constitution. Different DNA methylation signatures in the three distinct 'prakriti' phenotypes showed the epigenetic basis of traditional human classification in Ayurveda with relevance to personalized medicine. "Ayugenomics" irrefutably established that a genetic basis did indeed exist to the said individual constitutions. Allopathic medicine, however, is adamant about using conventional treatments, with only the dosage varying from patient to patient. The issue of whether contemporary, standardized herbal remedies will be equally beneficial on all patients emerges as a result.

Yet, prior to their release on the market, herbal treatments that have been scientifically studied for their qualities and have clear processes and paths of action may also run into more challenges. According to the review of Udalamaththa et al., the complexity and variety of bioactive chemicals may make clinical applications difficult. Moreover, a large-scale production method may lessen the primitive qualities of herbal treatments. Similar and strict controls will be implemented to herbal stem cell boosters used in treatment since standardization of herbal goods is required before the market introduction. Nonetheless, despite all the difficulties, pharmaceutical firms are vying for patents and marketing a variety of medications that might be utilized in stem cell treatment, including herbal stimulants, vitamins, and many more [12].

CONCLUSION

Throughout the beginning of time, people have relied on herbal medicine as a reliable kind of therapy. In allopathic medical practices or other forms of therapy using cutting-edge technology, the utilization of herbal medicine or associated treatment approaches is sparse, which may represent the "missing piece of the jigsaw" that researchers and clinicians have been trying to solve. However, in recent years, the use of both conventional medicine and cutting-edge technologies in concert has produced favorable results that are advantageous to the patients. Cases offered in this chapter provide a glimpse of contemporary research where herbal medicine and stem cells have been combined in pursuit of therapy against 'incurable illnesses'.

Despite the fact that the use of medicinal plants in stem cell research is still in its infancy, with limited population studies conducted in local communities, a dearth of related patents, and numerous challenges in applying these findings in a clinical setting, interest in this field of study has remained high thanks to the encouraging findings of basic scientific research. It's possible that preliminary research leading to more extensive research may provide affordable, readily accessible, nontoxic medications, stimulants, and dietary supplements that are helpful for stem cell treatment.

REFERENCES:

[1] H. Mizuno, M. Tobita, And A. C. Uysal, "Concise Review: Adipose-Derived Stem Cells As A Novel Tool For Future Regenerative Medicine," *Stem Cells*. 2012. Doi: 10.1002/Stem.1076.

[2] B. Rizeq, I. Gupta, J. Ilesanmi, M. Alsafran, M. D. M. Rahman, And A. Ouhtit, "The Power Of Phytochemicals Combination In Cancer Chemoprevention," *Journal Of Cancer*. 2020. Doi: 10.7150/Jca.34374.

[3] A. Przekora, "The Summary Of The Most Important Cell-Biomaterial Interactions That Need To Be Considered During In Vitro Biocompatibility Testing Of Bone Scaffolds For Tissue Engineering Applications," *Materials Science And Engineering C*. 2019. Doi: 10.1016/J.Msec.2019.01.061.

[4] H. Elkhenany, N. El-Badri, And M. Dhar, "Green Propolis Extract Promotes In Vitro Proliferation, Differentiation, And Migration Of Bone Marrow Stromal Cells," *Biomed. Pharmacother.*, 2019, Doi: 10.1016/J.Biopha.2019.108861.

[5] M. T. Carmen, Z. C. Lorena, V. A. Alexander, V. Amandio, And S. Raúl, "Coffee Pulp: An Industrial By-Product With Uses In Agriculture, Nutrition And Biotechnology," *Rev. Agric. Sci.*, 2020, Doi: 10.7831/Ras.8.0_323.

[6] M. A. Anwar, S. S. Al Disi, And A. H. Eid, "Anti-Hypertensive Herbs And Their Mechanisms Of Action: Part Ii," *Front. Pharmacol.*, 2016, Doi: 10.3389/Fphar.2016.00050.

[7] G. Muzes And F. Sipos, "Issues And Opportunities Of Stem Cell Therapy In Autoimmune Diseases," *World Journal Of Stem Cells*. 2019. Doi: 10.4252/Wjsc.V11.I4.212.

[8] P. Monika, M. N. Chandraprabha, A. Rangarajan, P. V. Waiker, And K. N. Chidambara Murthy, "Challenges In Healing Wound: Role Of Complementary And Alternative Medicine," *Frontiers In Nutrition*. 2022. Doi: 10.3389/Fnut.2021.791899.

[9] Y. Y. Yow *Et Al.*, "Therapeutic Potential Of Complementary And Alternative Medicines In Peripheral Nerve Regeneration: A Systematic Review," *Cells*. 2021. Doi: 10.3390/Cells10092194.

[10] J. Willemse, L. J. W. Van Der Laan, J. De Jonge, And M. M. A. Verstegen, "Design By Nature: Emerging Applications Of Native Liver Extracellular Matrix For Cholangiocyte Organoid-Based Regenerative Medicine," *Bioengineering*. 2022. Doi: 10.3390/Bioengineering9030110.

[11] S. S. Al Disi, M. A. Anwar, And A. H. Eid, "Anti-Hypertensive Herbs And Their Mechanisms Of Action: Part I," *Frontiers In Pharmacology*. 2016. Doi: 10.3389/Fphar.2015.00323.

[12] W. Bi, L. Hu, And M. Q. Man, "Anti-Ulcerogenic Efficacy And Mechanisms Of Edible And Natural Ingredients In Nsaid-Induced Animal Models," *African journal of traditional, complementary, and alternative medicines : AJTCAM*. 2017. doi: 10.21010/ajtcam.v14i4.25.

CHAPTER 5

HERBAL TREATMENT FOR SKIN DISORDERS

Padmapriya.G, Assistant Professor
Department of Chemistry, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- g.padmapriya@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Many skin conditions are common health issues that affect people of all ages, from newborns to the elderly, and may be harmful in a variety of ways. A healthy body depends on having good skin. Cancer, herpes, and cellulitis are among the skin disorders that many individuals might get. These disorders are routinely treated using certain wild plants and their components. The utilization of plants predates the existence of humans. Natural medicine is reportedly safe and inexpensive. It may also be used as a basic material to create new synthetic substances.

KEYWORDS:

Diseases, Herbal Treatment, Herbal Therapy, Medicinal Plants, Medicine.

INTRODUCTION

From ancient times, herbal treatments have been utilized to treat skin conditions. Even the great apes, who are our closest living relatives, employ herbal remedies for self-medication. Regional commerce in ethnobotanical treatments led to the development of particular herbs and their applications based on locally accessible plants. Throughout Europe, the Middle East, Africa, India, China, Japan, Australia, and the Americas, distinct regional herbal usage systems have emerged. The Ayurvedic herbs in India and the herb combinations created as a part of traditional Chinese medicine in China are two well-known systems that are still in use. Herbal remedies grew less popular in Europe and the US as refined extracts and synthetic chemical medications were more readily accessible. In recent years, there has been a revival in the use of herbs due to the following reasons: the side effects of chemical pharmaceuticals became obvious, there was a cry to return to nature, natural cures became a part of the green revolution, and there was a return to organic products. Patients and, to a lesser extent, doctors are becoming more interested in herbal treatments, particularly those for skin conditions. Herbal remedies that have been utilized for millennia throughout Asia, particularly in China and India, are now the subject of scientific research. The regulatory body Commission E in Germany is in charge of regulating herbal products and their suggested use. The only way that herbal items are currently regulated in the US is as dietary supplements. Active substances, purity, and concentration are not standardized. Also, there are no rules dictating which plants may be promoted for certain purposes [1].

This overview of herbal remedies includes both the more popular herbs that have been discovered to be effective in the treatment of dermatological conditions as well as those treatments that have scientific data supporting their clinical usefulness. This chapter also contains information about each herb's safety, which will help doctors choose which herbal treatments to utilize in their clinical settings. This talk also covers typical pharmacological interactions and adverse effects of herbal remedies that could occur in a dermatology environment. Ayurvedic medicine has been documented in India from about 3000 BC. The holistic and physiological concepts are combined in the Ayurveda medical system. It is predicated on the idea that the cosmos is made up of the same five energy components that make up the human body: earth, water, fire, air, and space. The three doshas, seven dhatus, and

three malas are the results of the interactions between these five components. An imbalance among the three doshas is said to be the cause of all illnesses. An intricate process of assessing the physical findings, pulse, and urine is used to make the diagnosis, along with an eight-point thorough assessment to assess both the physical and mental elements of the disorder. Based on the results, the therapy is then modified to suit each person.

TCM has been documented for nearly 4,000 years. TCM treats the full individual, much as Ayurvedic medicine does. It is based on the yin and yang energies, which are complimentary. Yin and yang are in harmony in healthy people, and disease happens when there is an imbalance between the two energies. The five elements that the Chinese also identify are metal, earth, water, fire, and air, each of which is connected to a certain organ. They also acknowledge the 14 main meridians along which chi or qi flows through the body. The Chinese assess how the environment and the body interact, including how waste leaves the body and how food, drink, and air enter. To identify the source of the imbalance and then choose the best course of action for each individual, special attention is paid to the physical examination of the person's tongue, iris, and pulses. Often, a combination of acupuncture, massage, and herbs is used as treatment. There is a whole textbook on dermatology in TCM [2].

Herbal treatment was first used as folk medicine in Western medicine. It started in the United States during the colonial era, when women utilized homegrown botanicals in their homes. The list goes on. The Farm is the Farm. The Farm is the Farm. The Farm is the Farm. The Farm is the Farm. The colonists in the northeastern United States learned a lot about Iroquois medicinal plants. These Old World European and Native American traditions were developed and employed by a group of doctors known as the "eclectics" in the nineteenth century. European and Chinese techniques further affected herbal medicine as it developed in the United States.

In the last two decades, the use of herbal therapy has grown among patients looking for alternatives to Western allopathic medicine. In 1997, it was projected that there were 629 million visits to practitioners of alternative medicine in the United States, exceeding the number of visits to all primary care doctors. These alternative remedies cost almost US$27 billion in 1997, of which US$3.24 billion was spent on herbal therapy. Around 50% of the population is thought to utilize alternative medicine in some capacity. Many people decide against sharing this information with their doctors. According to a previous poll, non-black, college-educated adults between the ages of 25 and 49 with an annual income of more than US$35,000 were the group most likely to adopt unorthodox treatment approaches.

The majority of people look for alternatives when conventional medicine has failed to provide them with enough relief or when they believe natural goods have fewer adverse effects. In order for doctors to better educate and care for their patients, the recent rise in the usage of alternative medicine has prompted increased study into alternative therapies. Herbal medicines are still offered as dietary supplements in the US, where there are presently no requirements for strength and effectiveness. Purity requirements for several frequently used herbs were established by the Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act of 1994. In Germany, a regulatory organization called as Commission E carefully investigated common European botanicals. Overall, 300 herbal products were reviewed by Commission E for the quality of their clinical effectiveness, safety, and applications. This knowledge has helped to standardize herbal remedies in Germany. A few herbal treatments have substantial scientific support for their effectiveness in treating dermatologic problems, and many have survived the test of time for their efficacy in doing so [3].

With alternative herbal remedies, a patient will often treat themselves, frequently without receiving the best possible expert guidance. Patients are advised to ensure the safe use of herbal

therapies by choosing therapies that are likely to achieve their health goals, making informed decisions about the efficacy, safety, interactions, and usage of the medicine, selecting therapies that are likely to achieve their goals, having a correct diagnosis prior to using the therapy, consulting reputable practitioners, disclosing all the remedies they are using to the practitioners, monitoring the effects of the remedies, both positive and negative, and waiting patiently . The name of the product, its composition, including the parts of the plant and the amount of raw material used, the daily dosage and timing of dosages, allergy and other warning statements, quality and safety testing, the expiration date, the manufacturer, the country of manufacture, the claims and indications for use, and information on product storage are among the product labeling information that patients should look for.

Herbal Dermatological Disorders Treatments

Herbal remedies are effective for treating the majority of common dermatologic conditions. The conditions are given below in alphabetical order.

Acne

Because of their exfoliative qualities, fruit acids including citric, gluconic, gluconolactone, glycolic, malic, and tartaric acids have shown some promise in the treatment of acne when applied topically. In one trial, 5% benzoyl peroxide was shown to be more effective than placebo in treating both inflamed and noninflamed acne lesions, whereas gluconolactone was more effective. Fruit acids' primary negative impact, particularly at larger amounts, is irritation. They are Class 1 while they are in the fruit [4]. Tannins are used topically to treat acne because they naturally have astringent characteristics. Witch hazel bark extract is often used as a home medicine by creating a decoction from 5 to 10 g of plant in 1 cup of water. Witch hazel is a Class 1 drug and is highly safe to use topically. Bark from the English walnut tree or the white oak tree may be used to make astringents similar to them. These remedies may be taken twice or three times day and should be filtered before use. Because to the tannins being lost during the distillation process, commercially available preparations lack astringency.

The leaves of the little Australian native tree Melaleuca alternifolia are used to make tea tree oil, an essential oil. It has over 100 different substances, mostly plant terpenes and the associated alcohols. 5% tea tree oil in a water-based gel was compared to 5% benzoyl peroxide in a research involving 124 participants. Although while tea tree oil did not work as quickly as benzoyl peroxide, it did statistically reduce the amount of acne lesions at the end of three months, and it was far less likely to cause side effects such dryness, irritation, itching, and burning. There have been sporadic instances of toxicity if taken internally and allergic contact dermatitis. Yet, it seems that the sensitizing agents in tea tree oil are the monoterpenes' breakdown products. Hence, topical therapy is thought to be relatively safe [5].

Acne may be reduced by bitter herbs that increase digestive activity, particularly acid production. Due to their antibacterial properties, Commission E also authorized the use of oral brewer's yeast and topical bittersweet nightshade for the treatment of acne. In China, topical duckweed is used to cure acne. Chinese people also utilize herbal mixes to cure acne both internally and physically.

Alopecia

In a randomized, controlled, double-blind trial including 86 individuals with alopecia areata, essential oils were examined. Every day, the scalp was massaged with a concoction of essential oils, including thyme, rosemary, lavender, and cedarwood, in carrier oils including grape seed and jojoba. Just carrier oils were used to massage the scalp in the control group. Success was

assessed using consecutive photos, a six-point scale, and a computer analysis of alopecia-prone locations. A statistically significant improvement over the control group was seen in the therapy group. There were no negative consequences noted.

In a 6-month double-blind research with 396 patients, the topical use of the Chinese herbal remedy Dabao for the treatment of androgenic alopecia was assessed. 50% ethanol, 42% water, and 8% Chinese herbal extracts are the main components of Dabao. These extracts come from saffron flowers, mulberry leaves, stemona root, pepper fruits, sesame leaves, Sichuan pepper fruit peel, ginger root, Chinese angelica root, pseudolarix bark, and hawthorn fruit. 50% ethanol, 48% water, and 2% each of cherry laurel water, cinnamon water, licorice syrup, sugar syrup, and a solution of burnt sugar served as the components for the placebo. In both groups, there was an increase in nonvellus hairs. Despite the fact that the Dabao group had statistically more nonvellus hairs than the placebo group, neither group's appearance significantly improved. There were no negative consequences noted. For alopecia areata, several TCM herbal formulations have also been employed [6].

Bacterial and Fungal Skin Diseases Ajoene, an ingredient in garlic, has been shown to have antifungal properties. In a trial of 34 patients treated topically with 0.4% ajoene cream once a day for tinea pedis, 79% noticed clearance after 7 days and the remaining reported clearing within 14 days. At a three-month follow-up, none of the subjects had any fungal infections. Sometimes, contact dermatitis has been linked to repeated topical exposure. Given that this plant is classified as a Class 2c, oral administration should be avoided when nursing. When garlic is used orally, prolonged bleeding may happen.

For the topical treatment of bacterial and fungal diseases, tea tree oil is used. Propionibacterium acnes, Staphylococcus aureus, Escherichia coli, Candida albicans, Trichophyton mentagrophytes, and Trichophyton rubrum are just a few of the bacteria that tea tree oil has shown in vitro efficacy against. In a randomized, double-blind research with 104 patients, 10% tea tree oil cream was contrasted with 1% tolnaftate cream and a placebo cream. Tolnaftate considerably outperformed tea tree oil in terms of mycologic cure, even though symptomatic alleviation was equivalent between the two groups. The difference in cure rates between the placebo and tea tree oil groups was not statistically significant. Another randomized, double-blind research with 117 patients evaluated the effectiveness of 1% clotrimazole solution and 100% tea tree oil solution for treating onychomycosis. After six months of therapy, the two groups had similar outcomes in terms of mycologic cure, clinical evaluation, and subjective evaluation of appearance and symptoms. Hence, the symptomatic management of onychomycosis, tinea pedis, and other superficial lesions may be aided with tea tree oil. Nevertheless, due to its cytolytic action on fibroblasts and epithelial cells, it shouldn't be applied to burns [7].

According to van Wyk et al., thyme oil from thyme has been used topically as an antibacterial and anticandidal agent. A methanol extract from the traditional Korean antifungal plant Galla rhois was shown to be effective against Candida albicans. Xu goes into great detail on the TCM herbal mixes for treating bacterial and fungal illnesses of the skin.

DISCUSSION

Chronic Venous Insufficiency

Persistent venous insufficiency and varicosities occur in at least 10-15% of men and 20-25% of women and resulting in and morbidity. Due to low adherence to existing treatments like compression stockings, alternative remedies are sought for [8], [9]. Butcher's broom and sweet clover may be used orally to treat venous insufficiency symptoms including discomfort,

heaviness, pruritus, and edema, according to German Commission E. Although sweet clover was shown to promote venous reflux, or "venous return," butcher's broom was shown to both raise venous tone and have diuretic qualities in animal trials. When used as instructed, Class 1 butcher's broom and sweet clover both seem safe.

Ginkgo has been taken orally for centuries in China and has more recently gained popularity in Europe and the United States as a treatment for a variety of ailments, including dementia, heart disease, asthma, vertigo, tinnitus, impotence, cerebral and vascular insufficiency, and vertigo and tinnitus. According to research, ginkgo promotes vasodilation, which helps many of these illnesses. The majority of ginkgo research focuses on claudication and cerebral insufficiency. According to studies, ginkgo may be more beneficial for treating certain vascular conditions than CVI. While ginkgo is a Class 1 drug, caution should be required when taking it orally due to reports of increased bleeding time and subarachnoid and intracerebral hemorrhage.

The effects of grape seed extract on CVI were investigated in a number of double-blind studies carried out in France. Oligomeric proanthocyanidins, a class of bioflavonoids with a history of positive effects on capillaries, are present in grape seed extract. In the trials, dosages ranged from 50 mg taken orally once day to 100 mg taken three times daily. No significant negative effects were noted [10] . One of the herbal substitutes that has received the most investigation is horse chestnut seed extract. The most potent terpene found in horse chestnut is aescin. Terpenes are plant chemicals. Leukocyte activation, a significant pathophysiological factor leading to CVI, seems to be linked to the mechanism of action. Aescin may potentially lessen vascular leakage by preventing the enzymes elastase and hyaluronase from degrading proteoglycans at capillary endothelium. For individuals with CVI, several double-blind, randomized studies of HCSE given orally have been carried out. It has been shown that HCSE reduces the volume of the lower legs as well as the calf and ankle circumference.

Individuals also showed lessened signs of weariness, soreness, and itching. According to one research, utilizing HCSE in the treatment of CVI is about equivalent to using grade II compression stockings. Most studies found that treating CVI with dosages of HCSE containing 100–150 mg of aescin per day, most often taken as 50 mg twice a day, resulted in statistically meaningful outcomes. The few adverse effects that were documented were gastrointestinal distress, lightheadedness, headaches, and itching. Rates of adverse effects recorded ranged from 0.9% to 3.0%, although in some trials they did not vary significantly from rates of adverse effects seen with a placebo. Notwithstanding the lack of long-term research on the effectiveness of orally taken HCSE in treating CVI and its aftereffects, these findings are encouraging and provide patients a secure substitute for compression stockings. In order to lessen the swelling and pain brought on by varicose veins, phlebitis, and hemorrhoids, HCSE has also been used topically in Europe.

It should be emphasized that horse chestnut tree seeds must be professionally processed by a trustworthy company to eliminate all poisons since they are harmful. It is regarded as reasonably safe when taken orally after the poisons have been cleaned out. One case report of drug-induced lupus has been linked to Venocuran, a venous insufficiency medication that contains HCSE. When HSCE was used topically, contact dermatitis has sometimes been described [11].

Witch hazel has high quantities of tannin, making it an effective astringent. It has been used topically to treat conditions including varicose veins and hemorrhoids that cause skin and mucous membrane irritation. Witch hazel extract may have local styptic and vasoconstrictive effects, according to animal studies. It has also been discovered that the alcohol fluid extract

causes rabbit vascular constriction. It is widely used orally for CVI in Europe. While it belongs to Class 1 and looks safe when given orally, the effectiveness of such a therapy has not been thoroughly researched in people.

Shingles Herpes

The major component of cayenne pepper, capsaicin, is sold as a cream to treat postherpetic neuralgia. It gives a burning feeling at first and is applied four to five times each day. During sustained usage, it reduces pain by depleting substance P in the local peripheral nerves. Herpes zoster is often treated topically with hibiscus in China. Both topically and internally, hibiscus has been shown to be a fairly safe Class 1 herb. Xu provides a list of TCM herbal concoctions for herpes zoster.

A topical licorice Class 1 gel formulation has been used to treat postherpetic neuralgia and herpes zoster. In vitro experiments have shown that glycyrrhizen, one of licorice's active ingredients, prevents varicella zoster from reproducing. No clinical trials have been conducted to yet to substantiate this. While oral usage is advised due to its inclusion in Classes 2b and 2d, topical use is reportedly highly safe.

Hyperhidrosis

Topical tannins may diminish sweat duct openings by precipitating surface proteins, which in turn lessens local sweating. Moreover, tannins have antibacterial qualities that serve to lessen unpleasant bacterial byproducts. Information regarding certain tannin sources may be found. Tannins are also present in black tea.

Pruritus

Camphor is obtained from the camphor tree Classes 2b and 2d distillation of the wood. Large dosages of it are hazardous. It may be put at a 0.5 percent concentration to lotions or creams to act as an antipruritic. For more information on the next event, click here. It possesses cooling, pruritis-relieving, and antimicrobial properties. Essential oils often make about 1-5% of lotions and creams. Moreover, oats offer a calming, antipruritic effect, as mentioned in Section 18.3.5. Birch, beech, and juniper tree tars have antipruritic and antiproliferative properties. They are used in creams, gels, and soaps at a concentration of 5–10%. These are photosensitizing chemicals, and moderate sun exposure may be advantageous.

Psoriasis

Aloe vera has been used for millennia to treat wounds and was recently shown to have promise as a therapy for psoriasis. Aloe vera is Class 1 internally and Class 2d externally. 60 individuals with mild to moderate plaque psoriasis received either 0.5% hydrophilic aloe cream or a placebo in a double-blind, placebo-controlled research. Comparing the aloetreated group to the placebo group, the former demonstrated statistically significant improvement. No side effects were recorded in the therapy group.

Cayenne pepper, which is Class 1 internally but Class 2d externally, contains the active component capsaicin. It has also been investigated for the treatment of psoriasis. Capsaicin was discovered to block the activation of the transcription factors NF-B and AP-1 by phorbol ester in vitro. Two studies demonstrated the efficacy of 0.025% cream used topically to treat psoriasis. In the first research, scaling and erythema in 44 individuals with moderate to severe psoriasis significantly decreased over the course of six weeks. The second was a 197 patient double-blind trial that used capsaicin cream four times per day for six weeks to treat their psoriasis. The results showed a substantial reduction in scaling, thickness, erythema, and itch.

The major side effect that was noted was a momentary burning sensation where the application was made. According to the German regulatory body Commission E, capsaicin should not be used for more than two days in a row, with a 14-day gap between treatments, on damaged skin or close to the eyes [12].

Sun Cancer

Red ginseng is a well-known TCM herb. In a recent research, red ginseng extracts administered topically were proven to suppress chemically produced skin cancers in mice. This is attributed to red ginseng's immuno-modulating abilities. Honeybees collect propolis, a resinous substance, from the blooms and bark of certain plants and trees. From ancient times, people have utilized propolis for its antibacterial, anti-inflammatory, analgesic, and anti-tumor properties, which are assumed to be brought on by the presence of flavonoids and related phenolic acids. A tumoricidal component, clerodane diterpenoid, has also been identified. The topical effects of this substance on the development of skin tumors in mice were investigated. With the help of the Internet, you may find a wide range of information on the Internet.

Antioxidant action is said to exist in rosemary extract. The effects of a methanol extract of the leaves on mouse skin cancers were examined. In mice given known chemical carcinogens, rosemary administered topically was shown to prevent the formation and growth of skin cancers. While the precise mechanism of action is still being researched, it seems that various extract constituents play a significant role in this procedure. According to this result, antioxidant qualities were not the only thing that prevented skin cancers. Rosemary is a Class 2b herb, hence it should not be taken during pregnancy.

Because of its antioxidant characteristics, silymarin, a flavonoid derived from milk thistle, has been given German Commission E approval for treating liver disease. To determine if this antioxidant impact might guard against tumor promotion, an experiment was conducted. In mice exposed to chemically induced skin tumor promotion, silymarin was shown to have significantly protective properties. This may include reducing the oxidative state, hyperplasia, and proliferation caused by the promoter. While the findings are encouraging, additional work using human models is still required. When used properly, silymarin is safe to use topically and consume orally.

Contradictions of Herbal Therapy

The safety classes assigned to herbal treatments vary widely. For instance, some are safe to eat and have excellent safety ratings, while others are very poisonous and biologically active and need to be handled with extreme caution. Each part of this chapter addresses the safety classifications of the herbs that are described, and the subsequent sections go into more depth about the interactions of herbal remedies that may be used in dermatology. There have been several reports of cutaneous responses to herbal remedies, with allergic contact dermatitis being the most frequent cutaneous adverse event. There have been reports of skin responses that are more severe. Topical herbal therapies for psoriasis and atopic dermatitis caused erythroderma in two patients, while "golden health blood-purifying pills" containing red clover, burdock, queen's pleasure, poke root, prickly ash, sassafras bark, and Passiflora caused Stevens-Johnson syndrome in one patient. Ingestion of indigenous African herbal remedies has reportedly been linked to the development of bullous and nodular lichen planus. Also, a young lady with leukemia-related Sweet syndrome that was brought on by an allergic reaction to topical arnica ointment was documented.

The use of TCM herbal combinations for the treatment of dermatologic illnesses has been linked to serious systemic side effects. Hepatotoxic consequences are the most prevalent. There

have been accounts of people with acute liver failure that even resulted in death, while the majority of patients recover without experiencing any significant side effects as long as the medicine is discontinued. Agranulocytosis and renal failure have also been reported. After receiving treatment with the TCM kamisyoyo-san for seborrheic dermatitis, one patient developed adult respiratory distress syndrome. After using a Chinese herbal tea to treat her atopic dermatitis, a patient developed reversible dilated cardiomyopathy. Heavy metals including lead, arsenic, and mercury have reportedly been found in Chinese and Indian herbal treatments. Moreover, over-the-counter herbal formulations from other nations have been discovered to include prescription drugs. Several herbs have incorrect names or labels.

Herbs and prescription drugs may interact with one other in a variety of ways. It is critical for patients to notify their doctors about any herbs, vitamins, and other over-the-counter medications they are consuming or using topically. The immune-upregulating properties of Echinacea, Astragalus, licorice, alfalfa sprouts, and vitamin E are the most significant medication interactions in the dermatology environment. Zinc may also lessen the effectiveness of corticosteroids and immune-suppressants . Certain herbs shouldn't be used with medicines like methotrexate since they have been known to cause liver harm. Several of the components used in TCM remedies are among these, as well as Echinacea, chaparral, germander, ragwort, and life root. The seizure threshold is lowered by y-linolenic acid-containing herbs like evening primrose oil, which has been used to treat dermatitis, psoriasis, and xerosis. As a result, anticonvulsant doses may need to be raised. Rue and other psoralen-containing plants may lead to phototoxic skin responses when used topically. Patients should be advised on the relative absence of regulation for herbal medicines in addition to the negative effects previously mentioned. To guarantee the purity, concentration, or safety of herbal supplements, there are presently only rudimentary quality-control procedures in place in the United States. While herb producers are barred from making effectiveness assertions, there are no limits on claims for what ailments these plants may cure. There are also few restrictions on which herbs can be used in formulations in the United States.

CONCLUSION

From ancient times, several herbal treatments have been used with positive anecdotal outcomes. A few randomized, controlled studies have also shown notable outcomes when using herbal remedies to treat dermatological conditions. Several nations, like Germany, now demand the standardization of herbal remedies and strict guidelines about their use and effectiveness in the treatment of sickness. Knowing the typical herbal substitutes available and the interactions or side effects that could arise is crucial for better patient counseling.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. Ahuja, J. Gupta, and R. Gupta, “Miracles of Herbal Phytomedicines in Treatment of Skin Disorders: Natural Healthcare Perspective,” *Infect. Disord. - Drug Targets*, 2020, doi: 10.2174/1871526520666200622142710.

[2] J. Hoffmann, F. Gendrisch, C. M. Schempp, and U. Wölfle, “New herbal biomedicines for the topical treatment of dermatological disorders,” *Biomedicines*. 2020. doi: 10.3390/biomedicines8020027.

[3] J. Sharma, R. D. Gaur, S. Gairola, R. M. Painuli, and T. O. Siddiqi, “Traditional herbal medicines used for the treatment of skin disorders by the Gujjar tribe of Sub-Himalayan tract, Uttarakhand,” *Indian J. Tradit. Knowl.*, 2013.

[4] R. R. Sharma, A. Deep, and S. T. Abdullah, “Herbal products as skincare therapeutic

agents against ultraviolet radiation-induced skin disorders," *Journal of Ayurveda and Integrative Medicine*. 2022. doi: 10.1016/j.jaim.2021.07.016.

[5] V. Chaudhary, M., Naithani., "Topical Herbal formulation for treatments of Acne and skin disorder," *United states Pat.*, 2012.

[6] N. Dabholkar, V. K. Rapalli, and G. Singhvi, "Potential herbal constituents for psoriasis treatment as protective and effective therapy," *Phytotherapy Research*. 2021. doi: 10.1002/ptr.6973.

[7] N. Sharma, P. Singh, and S. K. Gupta, "A Review on Role of Various Medicinal Plants in Cosmetics and Cure Health," *Curr. Res. Pharm. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.24092/crps.2019.090301.

[8] J. M. Brimson, M. I. Prasanth, D. S. Malar, S. Brimson, and T. Tencomnao, "Rhinacanthus nasutus 'Tea' infusions and the medicinal benefits of the constituent phytochemicals," *Nutrients*, 2020, doi: 10.3390/nu12123776.

[9] U. Anand *et al.*, "Ethnodermatological use of medicinal plants in India: From ayurvedic formulations to clinical perspectives – A review," *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*. 2022. doi: 10.1016/j.jep.2021.114744.

[10] O. Neamsuvan and P. Bunmee, "A survey of herbal weeds for treating skin disorders from Southern Thailand: Songkhla and Krabi Province," *J. Ethnopharmacol.*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.jep.2016.09.048.

[11] P. Sharma, B. P. Dwivedee, D. Bisht, A. K. Dash, and D. Kumar, "The chemical constituents and diverse pharmacological importance of Tinospora cordifolia," *Heliyon*. 2019. doi: 10.1016/j.heliyon.2019.e02437.

[12] D. J. Brown and A. M. Dattner, "Phytotherapeutic approaches to common dermatologic conditions," *Archives of Dermatology*. 1998. doi: 10.1001/archderm.134.11.1401.

CHAPTER 6

ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE THERAPY WITH HERBAL MEDICATION

Suhas Ballal, Assistant Professor
Department of Chemistry, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- b.suhas@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The most prevalent cause of increasing dementia in older people is Alzheimer's disease, a chronic neurological condition. In terms of creating symptomatic medicines, research on AD therapy has been somewhat successful, but there have been a lot of setbacks when it comes to creating disease-modifying drugs. The cause of AD is still unknown, and the current one-drug, one-target strategy for treating AD seems to be clinically ineffective. Although though research has mostly continued, AD disease-modifying treatments are still not available. Nonetheless, there are methods for treating symptoms. Throughout ancient times, several systems of medicine have employed medicinal plants to heal sickness. Many herbs have been shown to enhance cognitive function and may be useful in the treatment of AD. The function of medicinal plants and herbs in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease, their impact on hormones, their interactions with other medications, and stability-related tests for herbal pharmaceuticals are all included in this study.

KEYWORDS:

Alzheimer's disease, Herbal Medication, Herbal Pharmaceuticals, Treatment.

INTRODUCTION

In animal brains, neural progenitor cells continue to multiply and replenish themselves throughout life, which is essential for neurogenesis. Cognitive impairment may result from decreased NPC proliferation and self-renewal, which happens under circumstances including aging, chronic stress, and central nervous system illnesses. Fostering neurogenesis has been thought of as a possible treatment and preventative approach for Alzheimer's disease and other neurodegenerative illnesses. Also, it has been shown that transplanting fetal NPCs or NPCs produced in vitro by certain substances enhances mice's learning and memory. Nevertheless, there are still numerous unanswered problems about this approach, including the source of the donor cells and functional integration. On the other hand, pharmacological drugs that mobilize endogenous NPCs should provide an alternate cell therapy for neurodegeneration. Mobilizing endogenous NPCs should be thought of as both a viable therapeutic method as well as a preventative measure given that pharmacological drugs may be supplied readily and can target specific features of NPC activity [1].

Proliferation of neural progenitor cells is controlled by a number of external and intracellular stimuli. When growth factors, neurotrophins, or other morphogens are stimulated, it is essential that canonical intracellular signaling pathways like ERK and Akt kinase cascades be properly activated. According to studies, substances that alter these pathways encourage NPC growth and self-renewal. The underlying mechanism for the cognition-improving benefits of certain herbal medicines has recently been revealed in relation to several natural compounds obtained from herbal medications. The root of Acori tatarinowii, known as Rhizoma Acori tatarinowii, has long been a key component of traditional Chinese medicines used to treat brain diseases such senile dementia, dysmnesia, and stroke. Recent pharmacological investigations have shown that AT has neuroprotective properties and enhances memory and learning in old,

dysmnesic murines, as well as ischemic rats. It is unknown, however, if and how AT affects the growth and self-renewal of NPCs.

In this investigation, we found that AT therapy increased hippocampus neurogenesis in elderly mice as well as animals with the wild-type and transgenic forms of AD. Both in vivo and in vitro, AT and its active components, asarones, may encourage NPC growth. The ERK cascade is activated in response to AT or asarones therapy rather than the Akt cascade. Hence, our findings imply that AT and asarones may be used as therapeutic drugs to encourage neurogenesis and prevent cognitive loss brought on by aging and neurodegenerative diseases. Globally, Alzheimer's disease has been the most common form of dementia, and its prevalence is rising as a result of the world's aging population. An estimated 51.6 million people, or 0.7 percent of the world's population, suffer from dementia. The aggregate number of impacted persons more than doubled between 1990 and 2019. Up to 80% of diagnoses for dementia are brought on by Alzheimer's disease. The percentage of deaths due to AD is increasing, increasing by 89 percent between 2000 and 2014, despite the fact that the overall fatality rate from cardiovascular illnesses and stroke in the USA is down [2].

While treatment choices for persons with AD are still supportive and may enhance memory and alertness, they can also lessen the overall course of the disorder. Amyloid and tau protein, the degenerative features linked to Alzheimer's disease, are the main targets for potential therapeutics; nevertheless, early success in comparative analysis and smaller clinical trials is not yet repeatable in reasonably large administrations. The only strategies that have been shown to work in preventing cognitive decline and maintaining a healthy lifestyle are diet and exercise. Regardless of a patient's cognitive capability, these therapies are first-line recommendations for all patients. There is a place for alternative medicines, notably herbal therapy, even if certain FDA-approved pharmaceuticals are authorized for the management of AD. The outcomes of conventional treatments are usually unsatisfactory. Herbal treatments gave rise to the first pharmacopeias just around 200 years ago, and many contemporary synthetic drugs today have their roots in the plant kingdom. Traditional treatments saw a sharp decline as basic and clinical pharmacology emerged as significant medical specialties. Yet, the use of herbal remedies for a range of illnesses, including mental and neurological issues, is currently being researched. This issue may be explained in a number of ways. Patients want control over their medical decisions because, first, they are dissatisfied with conventional medicine, second, they believe herbal therapies are congruent with their own ideas and values, and third. Herbal medications may be crucial in the treatment of neurological disorders, as shown by the specificity of phytoconstituents and extracted compounds for Brain receptors. Moreover, studies on humans and animals have shown a scientific basis for the use of medicinal herbs [3]. Herbal medicines' general antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties, together with their unique cholinesterase inhibitory impact, suggest their use in Alzheimer's disease. A growing number of people are turning to herbal remedies because of its alleged affordability, safety, and effectiveness. Multicentric studies should be carried out to assess the efficacy of these herbal treatments either alone or as formulations for the treatment of AD. The efficacy of herbal drugs against Alzheimer's disease is discussed in the present review paper.

Outline of the condition Alzheimer's

Alzheimer's disease is an irreversible neurological condition marked by memory and cognitive impairment, also shown in Figure 1. According to current estimates, AD, the most prevalent kind of dementia, accounts for 75 percent of all cases. Moreover, AD ranks as the fifth-leading cause of mortality in people 65 years of age and older. Senile plaques and neurofibrillary tangles are thought to be the main pathology signs of AD. Growing data also points to the importance of a peptides in the pathophysiology of AD. There are no treatments available right

now to change AD. It has been shown that cholinergic and glutamatergic importance coexist in the development of AD. Low ACh concentrations and activity are detrimental to cognitive function in AD patients. Several anomalies, such as cholinergic neuron loss and decreased acetylcholinesterase activity, provide credence to the cholinergic hypothesis of AD. In the aging brain, misfolded protein accumulates and leads to metabolic loss, oxidative stress-induced damage, and synapse dysfunction. In AD, oxidative damage is indicated by high levels of DNA oxidation products as 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine in mitochondria and nuclei [4].

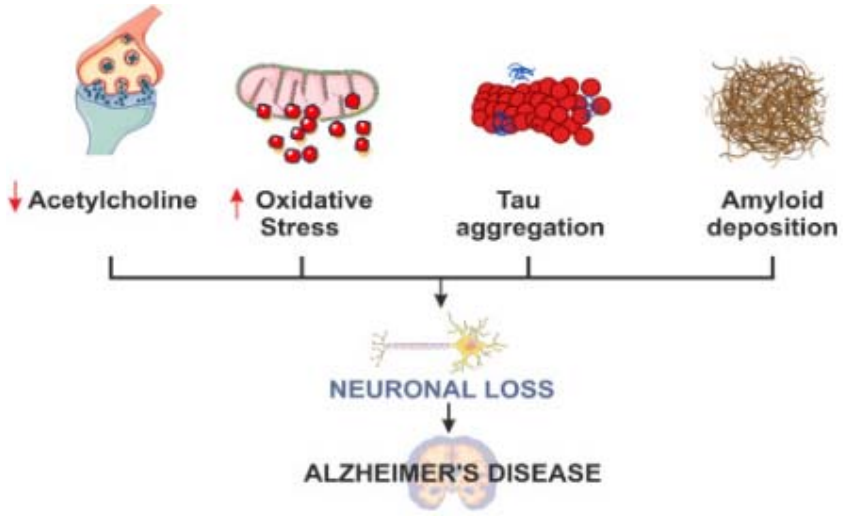

Figure 1: Illustrate the Pathophysiology of Alzheimer's disease.

DISCUSSION

The most prevalent kind of dementia, AD, has persisted throughout time, raising concerns for everyone, particularly the elderly. It is a neurodegenerative condition that limits a patient's ability to lead a normal social and professional life. An important obstacle is the rise in the number of persons with qualifying health conditions. Despite the high level of medical care provided to Alzheimer's patients, attempts to reverse the neurological condition seem to have failed. Notwithstanding the fact that these medications also have side effects that aggravate the patient's medical problems. Treatment for Alzheimer's disease involves controlling neurotransmitter enzymes like cholinesterase inhibitors or NMDA receptors using synthetic medicines, albeit this approach hasn't yet provided a fully effective therapeutic answer. The most effective alternative treatment for Alzheimer's neurological illness at the moment is herbal medication. Since they contain phytochemicals that are present in nature, several herbs have the capacity to enhance brain processes. By combating oxidative stress, which is scientifically connected to one of the accelerators of Alzheimer disease, these plants containing antioxidants might help lessen the pathogenesis of neurological symptoms [5].

Traditional medicine has been practiced all across the globe since the beginning of humanity. Several herbal remedies, as well as medicinal plants, have been touted as effective treatments for disorders including Alzheimer's, dementia, forgetfulness, and others. Ancient Chinese, Hindu, and Egyptian civilizations are where herbal remedies first appeared. There is a resurgence of scientific interest in the use of medicinal plants to treat AD because of the major impact on the use of herbs, medicinal plants, and their biologically active compounds to cure illness and enhance health without noticeably negative side effects. Just a small number of herbal remedies have undergone clinical testing, despite the fact that several have shown promise in experiments. Many secondary plant metabolites have also been used and marketed.

Ginkgo biloba, Centella Asiatica, Withania somnifera, Savia officinalis, Tinospora cordifolia, Lepidummeyenii, Curcuma longa, Glycyrrhiza glabra, Magnolia Officinalis, Convolvulus pluricaulis, and other medicinal plants have all been studied and claimed to be used in the treatment of AD.

Ginseng

One of the plants used to treat AD is ginseng. It is a well-known plant that is used to improve memory and vitality in China, Japan, and Korea. Chinese ginseng, often known as ginseng, includes phytochemicals such ginsenosides, a derivative of the triterpenoid dammarane, and 20-protopanaxadiol, which suppresses amyloid-beta aggregation, clears A from neurons, boosts the release of neurotrophic factor, and corrects mitochondrial malfunction. Ginsenosides from ginseng have significant AChE inhibitory activity, which is an efficient strategy for lowering AD symptoms, according to a molecular enzyme research. By the stimulation of phosphatidic acid receptors involved in hemolysis, gintonin, a bioactive glycoprotein, increases learning and memory ability. By the promotion of autophagy, anti-inflammatory mechanisms, anti-apoptosis, and oxidative stress management, it also reduces AD symptoms, as shown by comprehensive in vitro and in vivo investigations.

Gintonin modulates the G protein-coupled lysophosphatidic acid receptors, which affects the cholinergic system and neutrotrophic factors, reducing the degree of plaque formation. This function of gintonin in the treatment of AD has been scientifically demonstrated for many years. According to studies, giving mice gintonin enhanced their memory impairment by lowering A-plaque deposition and releasing sA-PP in the body. Gintonin is thought to have the capacity to boost choline acetyltransferase expression in the cholinergic system, causing the release of Ach and lessening the effects of A-induced cholinergic dysfunction in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. In order to boost intracellular regulation of the release of neurotransmitters and enhance cognition, it can also interact with the LPA receptor ligand in astrocytes. Due to the presence of stigmasterol, -sitosterol, and linoleic acid in it, red ginseng demonstrates protective benefits against A25-35-induced damage by suppressing the NF-B and MAPK pathway-mediated apoptosis and inflammation. The red oil and nonsaponin polysaccharide fraction worked in concert to suppress pro-inflammatory mediators by downregulating the p38/-JNK/-NF-B pathway and the caspase-3/PARP-1 signaling pathway. These actions also inhibited mitochondrial-mediated apoptosis and provided protection against A-induced injury [6].

Moringa Olifera,

Locally, the moringa olifera plant, also known as a member of the moringaceaceae family, is used to treat AD. This could be as a result of its many bioactive components. The phytochemicals flavonoids, alkaloids, saponins, tannins, and isothiocyanates are particularly abundant in moringa olifera. By boosting the synthesis of catalase and SOD, these phytochemicals lower the amount of lipid peroxides, which improves brain cognition. Also, it improves the stability of monoamine levels and lessens the production of tau hyperphosphorylation in experimental rats with hyperhomocysteinemia.

Ginkgo Biloba

This plant's leaves are used to treat cognitive impairment in Alzheimer's sufferers. It is a natural remedy. Terpene lactones and flavone glycosides are present in plant extracts. The terpene lactones include bilobalide, A, B, and C ginkgolides, as well as the flavone glycosides quercetin, kaempferol, and isorhamnetin. Through the control of glutathione peroxidase, catalase, and SOD activity, this plant extract protects against A-induced neurotoxicity by

preventing neuronal apoptosis, ROS accumulation, glucose uptake, mitochondrial dysfunction, and activation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase and c-JUN N-terminal kinase pathways. The Ginkgo biloba has the ability to enhance cognitive performance for the treatment of AD patients, according to Yang's scientific study findings. Ginkgo biboba is thought to have neuroprotective properties due to the actions of its flavonoids, terpenoids, and organic acids.

Herbs' impact on hormones and the treatment of Alzheimer's

Sex hormones like androgens and estrogens have a significant influence on behavior and help people retain their information. According to some research, women are more likely than males to suffer Alzheimer's disease. The primary difference between men and women is caused by differences in how the brain's cholinergic system responds to acetylcholinesterase inhibitors. There is also a variation in how quickly AD progresses in each gender, with men seeing a greater benefit from AChEItherapy than women. The primary female sex hormones, estrogens, are made up of a variety of steroid molecules. Together with the corpus luteum and the placenta, the ovaries' developing follicles are the primary source of their production. Although in smaller amounts, other organs such as the placenta, liver, and adrenal glands may also produce estrogens. The secondary source of estrogen is how postmenopausal women get their endogenous estrogen. Estrogen must first interact with a variety of receptors, including the ER- and -receptors, in order to exercise its effects.

The receptors are still widely distributed throughout the brain, albeit the hippocampus is where they are most concentrated, and the basal forebrain and cerebral cortex are where they are most concentrated. The principal source of testosterone-derived plasma estradiol in males is the aromatase enzyme, which is found superficially and throughout the male brain. Many studies suggest that the rate at which testosterone transforms into estrogen is slow, at 0.2% or less. Yet, because testosterone release from the testicles never completely stops, mature men have higher blood estrogen levels than postmenopausal women. Estrogen promotes the growth and survival of cholinergic neurons, enhances cholinergic activity, has antioxidant properties, and speeds up the non-amyloidogenic metabolism of the amyloid precursor protein. It also protects and maintains the health of the brain. The origin of a decline in estrogen levels, which may indicate brain injury, is yet unknown.

Nonetheless, constructed on the proposal of investigations done on animals, it argues that individuals with low estrogen are expected to build amyloid protein; this is the description of Alzheimer's, the deposition of amyloid plaques between nerve cells. Clusters of A proteins that collect in brain interstitial spaces and eventually obstruct nerve cell connection are what form these neritic symptoms. In addition to the AD in vivo models, estrogenic drugs exhibit in vitro neuroprotective efficacy against a damage. “In this way, estrogen in the brain may be able to eliminate the aberrant proteins linked to the progression of Alzheimer's disease. Lack of estrogen has been associated to a greater incidence and quicker progression of mental impairment or dementia. In a preclinical investigation, assemblies of A were injected into the nucleus basalis magnocellular of control and OVX mice to simulate the effects of estrogen on the cholinergic deficiency in AD, and the number of cholinergic cells was measured. The findings revealed that the A oligomers were the most damaging species administered, and estrogen therapy prior to the injection of A oligomers prevented the loss of cholinergic neuronal tissue [7]. While favorable benefits are not always seen in tests, postmenopausal women receiving estrogen-only or estrogen-progestogen hormone replacement treatment showed progressive losses in cognitive abilities and a lower risk of AD in observational studies. HRT improves cognitive functioning in menopausal women in most clinical investigations, while there is no universal agreement on this.

Another research found that women with the Apolipoprotein E SNPs epsilon 2/3, and 4 saw a rapid improvement in mental processing with HRT with estrogen plus progesterone. The Montreal Cognitive Assessment exam revealed that women with the e3/e3 genotype had worse verbal memory retention scores than controls, even women who were on hormone replacement therapy. The study of the relationship between endogenous sex hormone levels and cognitive capacities found that progesterone levels are related to verbal memory and overall thinking. Also, it was shown that the verbal memory act and the quantity of sex hormone-binding globulin correlated well. Studies on estrogen and progesterone found that they had a good effect on postmenopausal ladies' memory for what they had read or heard as well as other cognitive abilities.

Nevertheless, the Women's Health Initiative's clinical investigations found that estrogen medication alone and a progestin and estrogen combination at later ages of 65 to 79 showed a greater cause of perceptual decline and dementia. The researchers advise that women under the age of 51 with immature menopause benefit from HRT and have a lower risk of developing AD. The opportunity theory, which contends that estrogen's actions will vary depending on age, basis, and phase of menopause, might explain this discrepancy. When started just after menopause, estrogen therapy in women seems to be neuroprotective. Based on this finding, it seems sense to hypothesize that estrogen deficiency may have an impact on brain function following menopause. Certain inconsistencies may be attributed to the period Hormone replacement therapy is utilized [8].

It was also said that HRT medication made one more susceptible to cancer. Because to this characteristic, several estrogen-producing plants have been studied as a potential treatment for preventing postmenopausal forgetfulness and lowering the risk of developing the very prevalent neurodegenerative disease, AD. Recently, research has been done on the relationship between the estrogenic neuroprotective effects of medicinal herbs and their role in preventing neurodegeneration. In the course of their research, Zhao et al. developed a phytoestrogen formulation known as Phyto-SERM, which demonstrated 83 times more binding selectivity for ER than ER. The formulation's central estrogenic neuroprotective actions have no feminizing effects on the body. In addition, persistent exposure to phyto-SERM in mice resulted in the detection of aversion to menopausal symptoms. Also, in triple-female transgenic AD mice, continued therapy with phyto-SERM for nine months improved spatial recognition memory and reduced plaque of the cerebral amyloid- buildup. The mechanism of action in the AD mice brains revealed by gene expression analyses was that phytoestrogens protected neurons from harmful signals from the ER and glycogen synthase kinase. Phytoestrogen's therapeutic benefits in the treatment of AD corroborate this findings.

Drug-Herb Interaction Mechanism

Herbs were always thought to be innocuous since they were natural, but current research on both people and animals has shown that many prescription medicines interact clinically with herbal therapies. Polypharmacy is typical since people with Alzheimer's often have additional co-morbidities. The likelihood of drug-herb interactions increases when these individuals supplement their prescription drugs with vitamins and herbs. The definition of a drug-herb interaction is the suppression or stimulation of activity brought on by a herb when a drug is also taken. Drugs and vitamins, minerals, and dietary supplements may also interact in this manner. Such interactions between herbs and pharmaceuticals might increase or decrease the pharmacological or toxicological effects of either substance, complicating the treatment of long-term medications, such as those used to treat Alzheimer's disease.

The health state of the patient, the drugs being taken at the same time, the therapeutic indices of the drug or herb, the method of administration, the setting, and the timing of drug and herb administration have all been connected to the clinical importance of drug-herb interactions. Drug-herb interactions may occur as a result of modifications to pharmacokinetics or pharmacodynamic processes. For instance, when two medications compete for gastrointestinal absorption or when herbs promote the chelation of medications, co-administration of pharmaceuticals with herbal treatments might impair the drug's absorption. Herbs that stimulate or inhibit the binding of medicines to plasma or transport proteins may also impact how medications are distributed. Herbs may either work against or in favor of drug-receptor interactions at receptor sites. Research have also shown that some herbs may activate or inactivate enzymes that activate or inhibit metabolic processes. Herbs may potentially hinder or enhance the renal clearance of medicines [9].

Hepatic enzymes like cytochrome P450 and/or the drug transporter P-glycoprotein make it easier for herbs to induce or inhibit the pharmacological effects of medicines. The main location for drugs taken orally is the villus tip of enterocytes, which has a considerable amount of P-gp and CYP3A. P-gp and CYP are thus essential for the bioavailability of many medications as well as herbal remedies and may have major effects on drug-herb interactions. Drug-herb interactions may happen between herbs and AD medications, as well as between AD medications and medications the AD patient takes to control other comorbidities like depression or cardiovascular disease, or between AD medications and medications used as supplementary therapy.

For instance, it has been shown that ginseng and phenelzine interact. Phenelzine is a monoamine inhibitor that has been suggested as an additional therapy for AD due to its neuroprotective qualities. When ginseng was taken with phenelzine at a dosage of 45 mg/day, the concurrent treatment of the two caused headache, trembling, and manic episodes, as well as sleepiness and increased sadness in patients. While the exact mechanism of the interaction is unknown, it may be set off by ginseng's psychoactive central impact. In addition to inhibiting nicotinic acetylcholine receptors, ginseng saponins and other components of ginseng extract also increase the relaxation brought on by transmural electrical stimulation or nicotine in monkey cerebral arterial strips, stop the stimulation of voltage-dependent brain sodium ion channels, and block NMDA receptor-mediated signals in rat hippocampal neurons [10], [11].

CONCLUSION

Finding new treatments to counteract the negative effects of a hormone deficiency in tissues like the brain, bones, and others will be sped up as we gain a better understanding of the molecular mechanisms causing the unique effects of plant-derived estrogenic compounds. This will reduce the risk of disease while also halting the compulsive effects of low sex hormone concentrations. We must adopt a holistic approach that includes including natural herbal plants in our diet and residing in a community that fosters improved mental, social, and spiritual activities. This helps to reduce stress, which is a risk factor for AD, and counteract the negative effects of hormone deficiency on our health. Pharmaceutical technology is paying more attention to combination medications. A combination of plant treatments with potential neuroprotective effects could be effective in sustainable pharmaceutical practice. When used together, these products have a tendency to boost therapeutic efficacy and boost patient adherence to treatment. To overcome methodological flaws such inadequate experimental design, extremely small sample size, subpar outcome processes, and incorrect end-point choices, extensive research is also preferred. Further investigation into the biological mechanism and following investigations with a bigger sample size for clinical trials are also very important for determining the function and mode of action of medicinal plants.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. Prasansuklab and T. Tencomnao, "Amyloidosis in Alzheimer's disease: The toxicity of amyloid beta (A β), mechanisms of its accumulation and implications of medicinal plants for therapy," *Evidence-based Complementary and Alternative Medicine*. 2013. doi: 10.1155/2013/413808.

[2] A. Dey, R. Bhattacharya, A. Mukherjee, and D. K. Pandey, "Natural products against Alzheimer's disease: Pharmaco-therapeutics and biotechnological interventions," *Biotechnology Advances*. 2017. doi: 10.1016/j.biotechadv.2016.12.005.

[3] C. Y. Kwon and B. Lee, "Herbal Medicine for Behavioral and Psychological Symptoms of Dementia: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis," *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2021. doi: 10.3389/fphar.2021.713287.

[4] D. B. Hogan, "Progress update: Pharmacological treatment of Alzheimer's disease," *Neuropsychiatric Disease and Treatment*. 2007.

[5] S. K. Lin, S. H. Yan, J. N. Lai, and T. H. Tsai, "Patterns of Chinese medicine use in prescriptions for treating Alzheimer's disease in Taiwan," *Chinese Med. (United Kingdom)*, 2016, doi: 10.1186/s13020-016-0086-9.

[6] "Alternative Approaches for the Treatment of Alzheimer's Disease," *J. Park. Dis. Alzheimer's Dis.*, 2016, doi: 10.13188/2376-922x.1000020.

[7] S. P. Panda and U. Soni, "A review of dementia, focusing on the distinct roles of viral protein corona and MMP9 in dementia: Potential pharmacotherapeutic priorities," *Ageing Research Reviews*. 2022. doi: 10.1016/j.arr.2022.101560.

[8] P. P. Thakre, V. Ade, and S. Parwe, "Psychiatric Disorder and Its Management through Ayurveda: A Review," *J. Pharm. Res. Int.*, 2021, doi: 10.9734/jpri/2021/v33i64b35334.

[9] Y. Liu and M. W. Wang, "Botanical drugs: Challenges and opportunities. Contribution to Linnaeus Memorial Symposium 2007," *Life Sciences*. 2008. doi: 10.1016/j.lfs.2007.11.007.

[10] P. A. and T. T., "Amyloidosis in Alzheimer's disease: The toxicity of amyloid beta (A (beta)), mechanisms of its accumulation and implications of medicinal plants for therapy," *Evidence-based Complement. Altern. Med.*, 2013.

[11] Gabriel Alfonso Gutiérrez-Rebolledo, "Medicinal Plants for the Treatment of Metabolic Disorders. Part 2, Chapter 4. Alzheimer's Disease: Causes and Possible Alternative Herbal Treatment," *Nov. Sci. Publ.*, 2020.

CHAPTER 7

USES OF HERBAL REMEDIES AND PROBABLE MECHANISMS

Roopashree, Assistant Professor
Department of Chemistry, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- r.roopashree@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The function of traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) in the management of rheumatoid arthritis (RA). TCM has its own theoretical system to categorize the subtypes of RA, which is useful for more precise diagnosis and therapy using Chinese herbal medicines (CHMs) that are better suited for various symptoms. TCM primarily employs a versatile blend of CHMs to play a significant part in the treatment of RA. These extracts' primary constituents may be further broken down into alkaloids, flavonoids, triterpenes, saponins, and other substances. We investigate the possible mechanisms of TCM against RA with the use of omics analysis methodologies and procedures using a platform of transgenic and induced arthritic mice. These processes include essentially CHM and its extracts may suppress RA patients and experimental animal models, including synovitis, vascular proliferation and bone damage; this involves various biological signal exchange targets and pathways. In summary, TCM's primary function in the therapy of RA entails lowering pro-inflammatory factor expression and release, which lowers the intensity of the aberrant immune response.

KEYWORDS:

Disease, Herbal Medicines, Pathophysiology, Rheumatoid Arthritis, Transgenic.

INTRODUCTION

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is a chronic inflammatory illness that causes symmetrical joint pain and swelling as well as severe stiffness after rest. While the pathophysiology has not been established, it may include a mix of genetic and environmental variables. Most researchers are focused on researching joint injuries associated with the inflammatory response, such as synovitis, pannus, cartilage degradation, and other signaling pathways. Numerous studies have found that people with RA have an increased risk of other complications like myocardial infarctions, strokes, lung function issues, neurological abnormalities, and depression. RA can also cause a wide range of other diseases, including, and the later stages of the disease will result in irreversible bone injury, which will lead to joint motion disorder. Serious instances result in impairment or even higher than anticipated fatality rates, and the outcome of inadequate therapy is that the lengthy RA treatment process and lack of effective treatment may create physical, emotional and economic stress to the patient.

This translates to between and % of adults in the industrialized world, with between and new cases per, individuals per year. Up until now, the purpose of RA therapy has been pain relief and inhibition of inflammatory responses. In addition to NSAIDs, steroids, and disease-modifying antirheumatic medications (DMARDs), RA treatment mostly depends on ancillary tools like stents and splints to enhance general body function. In severe situations, surgical joint therapy may stop the condition in its tracks. Nevertheless, prolonged usage of the aforementioned medications will have negative effects; for instance, NSAIDs may cause gastrointestinal bleeding, dyspepsia, and other side effects [1].

TCM has been practiced for a very long time and was once quite popular over much of East Asia. It is now progressively being used in many western nations as a way of illness therapy and healthcare. It has long been a staple of complementary and alternative medical methods. It is based on the TCM ideas for the treatment of various illnesses, including acupuncture and cupping; these techniques entail the flexible use of Chinese herbal medicines (CHMs) and their associated extracts. The TCM categorization system places RA under the "Bi syndrome" class, which dates back to the "Huang Di Nei Jing," a book on traditional Chinese medicine. Blood circulation blockage syndrome produced by problems with the catheter and meridians results in bi syndrome, which is characterized by a shortage of qi and blood and an invasion of chilly and damp heat into the body. The use of TCM in RA-related research is systematically introduced and discussed in this review, including the treatment of RA in TCM, the representative compounds and proprietary Chinese medicines used, the active ingredients found in CHMs, and the biological carriers and dosages from pharmacodynamic research, which served as the foundation for the potential mechanisms of the TCM prevention and treatment of RA, including the relevant genes, proteins, metabolites, and pathogens.

An explanation of RA based on TCM theory TCM adheres to "holistic conceptions" and "dialectical therapies" for many illnesses, i.e., it bases treatment decisions on the distinctive symptoms of each patient before settling on a tailored approach. In the context of TCM, RA is a member of the Bi syndrome class, which is distinguished by the blockage of meridians, and has features of the cold, hot, and defect syndromes [2]. Heat-related symptoms include edema, joint inflammation, and heat; acute discomfort is often eased by chilling the joints. Additional signs include a quick heartbeat, a crimson face, a red tongue, darker urine, constipation, thirst, and irritation. , Defect patterns are defined by a deformity: the limb extension is repressed, and they often occur in the late stages of the illness. Symptoms of defects mix elements of cold and heat. Patients with hot symptoms had higher levels of ACPA, more severe bone damage, higher levels of immune factors, increased expression of genes involved in lipid metabolism and the small G protein signaling pathway (TIAM), severe inflammatory reactions, and high inflammatory activity in rheumatoid arthritis. ,

Cold symptoms are defined as an attack from an external "cold" pathogen algorithm, which causes symptoms like a cold feeling in the limbs and joints, stiffness or pain of the joints or muscles, which is relieved by application of warmth and worsens with exposure of the patient to the cold, a local reduction in microcirculation, a thin white tongue, a strong and nervous pulse, a pale face, thin stools, a lot of urine, and no thirst. ,, Compared to patients with hot RA, individuals with cold RA have greater rates of lipid and protein mobilization and lower levels of acylcarnitine, which indicate diminished muscle mass and more prominent muscle rupture. Hormones play a significant role in these differences. Reduced stress response is linked to hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis dysfunction in RA patients, which results in a lack of responsiveness to stressors and the continuation of autoimmune and inflammatory processes. The cold RA group has decreased CRP I activity and altered carnitine homeostasis, which may contribute to an increase in body weariness levels. Supplementing with carnitine and acylcarnitine may be advantageous for cold-type RA patients but not as much for hot-type RA patients [3].

The research system has identified disparities in the biological backgrounds (genes, proteins, and metabolites) of individuals with cold and hot RA symptoms, and these findings expand the possibility of individualized RA therapy. It is believed that RA is an autoimmune condition. The pathogenesis of RA is unknown. The development and utilization of animal models, particularly those that are comparable to human models, is a successful approach for studying RA. Understanding the pathophysiology of RA may be done with the use of animal models.

Since they have distinctive qualities, suitable animal models should be chosen in accordance with the results of the investigations. Animal experimental models of arthritis have been induced using a variety of techniques, offering crucial insight into the pathophysiology of human RA. Animal models are employed in arthritis research in addition to rodent (self-onset and external factor-induced) models. Related inflammatory cells, such as inflammatory synovial cells, are implicated in these animal models. Genetically modified animals with arthritis complex clinical events may be examined using a variety of genetically altered and transgenic mice (Table S). We briefly present the traditional TNF transgenic mouse model in this review. In, J. Keffer et al. created transgenic mice that overexpressed human TNF-. Human TNF anti-monoclonal antibodies were used to totally prevent mice from developing chronic inflammatory polyarthritis. Since then, multi-line TNF transgenic mice have proved the efficiency of anti-TNF in the human body and emphasized the significance of TNF with regard to the cytokine levels of RA. TNF transgenic mice provide an effective tool for researching RA.

Arthritis caused by adjuvant

Adjuvant arthritis is the oldest animal model of induced arthritis. Experimental animals' tail roots were subcutaneously injected with an inactivated mycobacteria suspension in an oily emulsion; this slowly progressed into arthritis and produced excruciating discomfort after approximately two weeks. The synovium's lymphocyte infiltration, the volume of the foot claw, and bone degradation were the pathological findings. As early as the s, this model was primarily used to test the analgesic effects of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), but it has been reported that many medications for the treatment of RA are unable to significantly improve the pathological state of RA, which limits the scope of their application.

.Arthritis caused by collagen

A frequently utilized animal model is collagen-induced arthritis (CIA). To induce CIA in lab animals, type II collagen is emulsified in insufficient Freund's adjuvant. Rats were first used to establish this arthritis model. Eventually, mice predominated. CIA and human RA are quite similar. The CIA model is a gold standard in vivo paradigm for RA investigations because it disturbs tolerance and generates the dual properties of autoantibodies acting against the patient themselves and collagen. T cells and B cells have crucial roles in the development of arthritis, according to research on the CIA model. The CIA model has shown to be effective for creating ideas that can then be applied to people and utilized to verify new treatment objectives.

Models of illnesses and syndromes based on TCM philosophy

According to TCM, RA is classified as a Bi syndrome. To provide a relevant experimental model, physical environmental conditions are increased in the induced RA model, such as enabling collagen-injected rats to swim in freezing water. This model's preparation technique involves simulating how a windy, chilly environment might affect the body in TCM [4].

Other forms of arthritis

There are arthritis animal models generated by antibodies and chemical reagents, such as arthritis induced by collagen antibodies and zymosan-induced arthritis, in addition to traditional adjuvant-induced arthritis and often used CIA experimental models. The only examples given here are from rodent models, although certain cell models have been extensively employed in research on targeting mechanisms such biological signaling networks. In a nutshell, there are two basic categories of arthritis models that may be studied: induced arthritis and spontaneous arthritis. Despite being different subtypes, they share a number of

traits, including localized inflammation of both large and small joints, the contribution of cytokines to the development of arthritis, synovitis brought on by these advancing pathological factors, pannus and cartilage erosion, and other RA phenomena.

CHM and their extracts' effects on RA

A variable mix of CHMs and their natural products guided by TCM theory may play a preventative and therapeutic function for patients with varied disorders [5].

In China, the prescribing of CHMs has been widely employed in clinical practice and has progressively led to norms and processes that have the government's blessing. The usefulness of TCM is rapidly becoming clearer as TCM modernisation progresses. For instance, by discussing the effectiveness of chemicals utilizing chemi-omics, What type of link there is between the active components and the metabolism in blood including CHM complex components after entering the human body may be explained by serum pharmaceutical chemistry technology employing CHMs. Alkaloids, flavonoids, triterpenes, quinones, volatile oils, steroids, and polysaccharides, which have also been investigated and discovered to play a certain pharmacological role in the biological mechanisms of many diseases, have been found to be the primary active components of CHMs, according to numerous studies. – This is also shown in studies on RA, where traditional treatments include the Wutou decoction, Guizhi Shaoyao Zhimu decoction, Simiao pill, and Juanbi decoction, among others. We have compiled the CHMs and their associated substances that have an impact on rheumatoid arthritis in a systematic manner [6].

DISCUSSION

The development of analytical tools and procedures has expedited the maturity of omics. Because they reflect the function and metabolism of human tissues and organs through the overall analysis and offer fresh perspectives on examining the pathogenesis of human diseases, many of them, including genomics, proteomics, metabonomics, and transcriptome, have made irreplaceable contributions to the field of life science. Omics has also been extensively employed in several RA research. The degree of RA-related research is rising thanks to the identification of associated genes, proteins, and biomarkers at the metabolic level [7].

Reduction of vascular growth and synovial Inflammatory Response

Synovial cells that resemble fibroblasts make up the majority of synovial tissue. Inflammatory cytokines, chemokines, and matrix protein degradation enzymes can be secreted by fibroblast-like synovial cells, and these biological factors may cause synovial cells to enter a pathological state. For example, abnormal synovial tissue cell signal conduction can lead to an imbalance in the proliferation and apoptosis of synovial tissue cells. Since hypoxia inducible transcription factor- (HIF-) may activate and boost the expression of functional genes involved in signal transduction and energy metabolism in RA fibroblasts in low oxygen settings, Konisti S. and Meng demonstrated that hypoxia may promote the beginning of RA. Toll-like receptors (TLRs) may also act as adaptive immune response modulators, according to studies. TLRs may trigger the production of TNF- and other chemokines by monocytes in RA patients with excessive immune system activation. A type of inflammatory mediator known as TNF-, which has a wide range of biological effects, may promote the growth of synovial fibroblasts. According to research, paeonol herbal extracts may decrease the expression of miR-'s direct target FOXO, which is particularly significant since it prevents the induction of TNF.

Hepatocytes may be stimulated by IL- to generate various acute phase response proteins, B cell production, immunoglobulin, and rheumatoid factors. It is important to note that Yang et al.

observed the effects of the CHM Aconitum leucostomum Worosch on human fibroblast-like synovial cell rheumatoid arthritis (HFLS-RA) cells using RT-qPCR and Western blotting. The results showed that the apoptosis rate of the Aconitum leucostomum Worosch group was significantly higher than that of the control group (P < .), and the expression levels of HIF-α, TLR mRNA and proteins were substantially down-regulated (P < .) in the cell culture supernatant from HFLS-RA cells (P < .). TNF- and IL- levels were considerably reduced (all P .). These findings indicate that the crude drug processing products and monomers of A. leucostomum Worosch may have anti-rheumatic effects on HFLS-RA cells, as well as the ability to reduce cell proliferation and increase apoptosis.

The reduction in pro-inflammatory cytokines and the downregulation of HIF and TLR expression are responsible for these effects. The recombination of extracellular matrix (ECM) components and fibroblast activation have been shown to be closely related in the RA synovial tissue fibrosis, and the conversion of transforming growth factor- (TGF-) plays a significant role in the fibrosis response. Chen hypothesizes that TGF- is a secreted protein that controls fibrogenesis, tissue proliferation, and cell differentiation. [8], [9] When inflammation develops, TGF- stimulates myofibroblasts through two different signal transduction routes. This may result in aberrant synovial ECM composition and synovial fibrosis, where TGF- builds up in the ECM. The evident pathological reactions of myofibroblast fibrosis may include the activation and proliferation of myofibroblasts and the elevated expression of -smooth muscle actin (-SMA). While Tannahill G. M. and other researchers have demonstrated that succinic acid acts on HIF- in macrophages and increases the secretion of the inflammatory mediator IL-, succinic acid may also be fibroblast-forming, as it participates in the anaerobic respiration of all cells as an intermediate in the citric acid cycle under hypoxic conditions. Inflammation in a hypoxic environment is the essential point.

Hypoxic TGF- induces increased succinate accumulation and responds to NLRP inflammatory factor activation by releasing IL- to further increase TGF- induction, indicating a vicious cycle between inflammation and fibrosis in the activation of muscle fibrosis. This cycle is caused by the reversal of succinic dehydrogenase (SDH) activation and a dependence on HIF--induced NACHT, LRR, and P Three saponins from the roots of Clematis mandshurica Rupr were separated to produce clematichinenoside AR (C-ar), a TCM compound used to treat arthritis. Li and other researchers discovered that C-ar can inhibit the activity of succinic dehydrogenase, breaking the vicious cycle between NLRP inflammatory mediators, succinic acid, and TGF-, resulting in the inhibition of inflammation and fibrosis of the fibroblasts. C-ar has anti-inflammatory and immune inhibition effects.

Many studies have shown the tight connection between the growth of blood vessels and the development of RA; neovascularization may encourage the entry of inflammatory cells into the bones and joints, leading to synovial hyperplasia and bone loss. In RA, macrophages and synovial tissue fibroblasts release VEGF, a growth factor that is a crucial regulator of angiogenesis. In order to support the development of new blood vessels, VEGF can stimulate the migration and proliferation of endothelial cells. HIF- cytoplasmic accumulation, positive feedback control of VEGF and HIF- expression and release, and the VEGF pathway in RA macrophages and fibroblasts When there is hypoxia, synovial tissue may cause angiogenesis [10], [11].

CONCLUSION

At now, mainstream cognition of the pathogenesis of RA centers on the immunological abnormalities generated by the innate and external environments, which will draw numerous inflammatory mediators to concentrate on the big joints, leading to synovitis and bone

destruction. From the dialectical type to symptomatic therapy, TCM has its own theories and approaches pertaining to the function of the illness; this is carried out in accordance with clinical guidelines. The above-mentioned CHM compounds and their herbal extracts have an antagonistic effect on RA patients and experimental animal models, which can be explained by the inhibition of synovitis, vascular hyperplasia, bone disorders, and immune cells being out of balance. TCM uses CHMs and their natural products to affect RA. It is well known that CHMs and their natural products have a wide range of biological activities; the main drivers of their pharmacological activity are their anti-inflammatory and antioxidative stress properties. – While many of the findings from the use of omics tools and approaches to examine the mechanism of RA in transgenic and induced arthritic animal models are good, these phenomena do not seem to be specific. This is important to note.

In other words, it is observed that the functions or inhibitory effects of CHMs and their natural products on certain targets and pathways are also identified for various illnesses, not just RA, such as in the case of NF-κB, TNF-α and members of the interleukin family. , We must immediately come up with a brand-new, very precise explanation for RA that is, of course, related to the most recent study techniques and findings. In conclusion, systemic biology research on the effects of TCM and CHMs on RA has revealed that these treatments have the potential to improve the pathological conditions of RA patients and experimental animal models by modulating the expression of inflammatory mediators to reduce oxidative stress, regulating the production of cytokines and chemicals, and reducing the proliferation of harmful genes and inducing apoptosis. Lastly, the inflammatory reactions in joints are soothed, the excessive proliferation of the synovial membrane and vascular wall cells is reduced, and the imbalance of osteoclasts is managed to prevent bone damage.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. Moini Jazani, H. Nasimi Doost Azgomi, A. Nasimi Doost Azgomi, and R. Nasimi Doost Azgomi, “A comprehensive review of clinical studies with herbal medicine on polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS),” *DARU, Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences*. 2019. doi: 10.1007/s40199-019-00312-0.

[2] S. Skariyachan, N. Taskeen, M. Ganta, and B. Venkata Krishna, “Recent perspectives on the virulent factors and treatment options for multidrug-resistant Acinetobacter baumannii,” *Critical Reviews in Microbiology*. 2019. doi: 10.1080/1040841X.2019.1600472.

[3] C. S. Sundaram, J. Sivakumar, S. K. Subbiah, T. Zin, and U. S. R. Mahadeva Rao, “Antidiabetic potential and high synergistic antibacterial activity of silver nanoppapers synthesised with musa paradisiaca tepal extract,” *Med. J. Malaysia*, 2021.

[4] S. Muhammad, A. Naeem, A. Shaukat, S. Javaid, and S. Alvi, “Drug-Induced Immune Thrombocytopenia From Administration of a Local Anesthetic Agent Resulting in Splenectomy,” *Cureus*, 2020, doi: 10.7759/cureus.8293.

[5] K. Kaur, R. Kaur, and I. Bala, “Therapeutics of premature hair graying: A long journey ahead,” *Journal of Cosmetic Dermatology*. 2019. doi: 10.1111/jocd.13000.

[6] M. G. Rahbardar and H. Hosseinzadeh, “Mechanisms of action of herbal antidepressants,” in *The Neuroscience of Depression: Genetics, Cell Biology, Neurology, Behavior, and Diet*, 2021. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-12-817935-2.00005-2.

[7] P. S. Patil, P. S. Patil, and R. S. Bhambar, “Effective Natural Drug Remedies against Herpes Zoster: A Review,” *J. Drug Deliv. Ther.*, 2020, doi: 10.22270/jddt.v10i6-s.4599.

[8] R. S. MacWalter, H. W. Fraser, K. M. Armstrong, G. Rivera-Miranda, and P. Dion, "Orlistat enhances warfarin effect," *Ann. Pharmacother.*, 2003, doi: 10.1345/aph.1C122.

[9] I. Ziment, "Herbal antitussives," in *Pulmonary Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, 2002. doi: 10.1006/pupt.2002.0343.

[10] V. M. Arlt, M. Stiborova, and H. H. Schmeiser, "Aristolochic acid as a probable human cancer hazard in herbal remedies: A review," *Mutagenesis*. 2002. doi: 10.1093/mutage/17.4.265.

[11] C. E. Ugwu and S. M. Suru, "Medicinal use and health benefits of Allium sativum: A comparative review of the whole extract vs bioactive constituents," in *Allium Sativum: Chemical Constituents, Medicinal Uses and Health Benefits*, 2016.

CHAPTER 8

OVERVIEW OF HERBAL MEDICINE: ITS APPLICATIONS, HISTORY, REGULATION AND CURRENT DEVELOPMENTS

Swarupa.V, Assistant Professor
Department of Chemistry, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- v.swarupa@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Traditional medicine is defined as "the knowledge, skills, and practices based on the ideas, beliefs, and experiences unique to various cultures, employed in the health maintenance process and even in the prevention, diagnosis, improvement, or treatment of physical and mental disease" . A common philosophy of traditional medicine is a holistic approach to life, equilibrium of the mind, body, and environment, and an emphasis on health rather than disease. There are numerous different systems of traditional medicine, and the philosophy and practices of each are influenced by the prevailing conditions, environment, and geographic area within which they first evolved. The use of herbs is an integral component of all traditional medical systems, and the emphasis is often on the patient's general health rather than the specific illness or sickness they are experiencing.

KEYWORDS:

Environment, Monographs, Traditional Medicine, Herbal Medicine, Syndrome.

INTRODUCTION

Traditional Chinese medicine is a crucial illustration of how collected information from the past is used in modern healthcare with a holistic perspective. TCM has a more than three thousand year history. The earliest known herbal document in the world is The Divine Farmer's Classic of Herbalism, which was put together in China some years ago. Many herbal pharmacopoeias and monographs on specific plants have been established from the accumulated and meticulously gathered material on herbs.

A complete understanding of the patient and their symptoms stated in terms of the balance of yin and yang serves as the foundation for both diagnosis and therapy. In contrast to yang, which stands for the sky, heat, and masculinity, yin symbolizes the ground, cold, and femininity. The interactions of the five elements that make up the universe—metal, wood, water, fire, and earth are influenced by yin and yang's activities. TCM practitioners strive to manage the yin and yang levels via meridians, which bring and conduct energy through the body. TCM is a rising technique that is utilized for both illness prevention and treatment, as well as for boosting health. Herbal medicine is a crucial component of TCM, which includes a variety of other techniques. Ginkgo biloba, Allium sativum, and Panax ginseng, three of the most popular botanical products, have their roots in TCM and are now utilized to treat a wide range of illnesses [1].

Drugs created via chemical synthesis and their widespread manufacture over the last century have completely changed the way that most people access healthcare worldwide. Large swaths of the populace in underdeveloped nations continue to depend on conventional doctors and herbal remedies for their basic care, nevertheless. Up to % of the people in Africa and % of the population in India rely on traditional medicine to aid them with their medical requirements. Almost % of regular hospitals in China include facilities for traditional medicine, which makes up about % of all healthcare services provided there. Traditional medicine is, however, not only used in underdeveloped nations; during the last years, interest in natural remedies has grown

significantly in affluent nations, with a rise in the use of ethnobotanicals. Around % of adults and % of children in the United States used traditional medicine. When all forms of prayer were disregarded, the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine found that herbal treatment or the use of natural items other than vitamins and minerals was the most often utilized alternative medicine. A poll in Hong Kong found that % of the participants had much more confidence in TCM than in Western treatment. In a study of, 3 persons in the United States, .8% reported using at least one herbal supplement. In another poll, % reported using dietary or nutritional supplements at the time of the interview, with multivitamins and minerals being the most popular [2].

The most frequent justifications for choosing traditional medicine are that it is more cost-effective, more in line with the patient's ideology, allays worries about the side effects of chemical medications, satisfies a desire for more individualized health care, and makes health information more widely available. Herbal remedies are mostly used for chronic, as opposed to life-threatening, diseases and for health promotion. Yet, the use of traditional treatments rises when modern medicine fails to effectively treat an illness, as is the case with advanced cancer and emerging infectious diseases. . A few years ago it was a little different. A few years ago it was a little better. A few years a half. A few years a half. This is not always the case, particularly because it is highly typical to take herbs together with prescription pharmaceuticals, over-the-counter treatments, or other herbs.

Whether or whether individuals have physical or financial access to allopathic treatment, traditional medicine is a thriving worldwide commercial industry that offers a crucial health care service. The cost of "alternative" treatment in the United States was estimated at US$.7 billion. By, it had doubled, with herbal medications developing more quickly than any other alternative treatment. Annual spending on conventional medicine is projected to reach US$ million, US$1 billion, and US$2.3 billion in Australia, Canada, and the United Kingdom, respectively. These statistics reflect the widespread use of herbal and other traditional medicines in various healthcare systems as well as its inclusion in many industrialized countries' medical education programs for physicians.

It is impossible to disregard the market for ethnobotanicals in its entirety. For instance, in , the overall sales of nonprescription herbal drugs in pharmacies accounted for about % of the total sales of nonprescription drugs in Germany, and the annual retail sales of herbal goods in the United States were projected to be US$5.1 billion. Herbal medicine is widely utilized in India, where the industry uses 0 different plant species, 8 of which are employed in significant volumes that surpass 0 metric tons annually. China produced herbal medicines worth a total of .6 billion Chinese yuan. Western Europe's yearly sales in topped $5 billion thanks to the continuation of this trend. Sales of herbal goods in China reached US$ billion, while in Brazil, sales of herbal treatments brought in US$0 million. The anticipated yearly global market for these goods was close to US$ billion [3].

Nowadays, herbs are used to treat both acute and chronic illnesses, as well as a wide range of disorders, including inflammation, cardiovascular disease, prostate issues, depression, and immune system support, to mention a few. Traditional herbal treatments, such as the Africa flower, have been used for many years in Africa to treat the wasting symptoms associated with HIV. In China, traditional herbal medicines played a significant part in the strategy to limit and treat severe acute respiratory syndrome. Herbal medications are also highly widespread in Europe, with Germany and France leading in over-the-counter sales among European nations, and in most industrialized countries, one may find essential oils, herbal extracts, or herbal teas being offered in pharmacies alongside conventional pharmaceuticals.

The entire herb, teas, syrup, essential oils, ointments, salves, rubs, capsules, and tablets that include a pulverized or powdered version of a raw herb or its dried extract are just a few of the processed and consumed forms of herbs and plants. Alcoholic extracts, vinegars, hot water extracts, long-term boiling extracts, often of roots or bark, and cold infusions of plants are some examples of the many types of plants and herbs that may be extracted. The components of a herbal extract or product may vary greatly across batches and manufacturers since there is no standardization in place [4].

A wide range of chemicals are abundant in plants. The majority of them are phenols or their oxygen-substituted derivatives, such as tannins, and many of them are secondary metabolites. Several of these substances have antioxidant qualities. Ethnobotanicals are significant for pharmacological research and drug development since they may be utilized as starting materials for the manufacture of pharmaceuticals or as models for pharmacologically active substances in addition to being employed directly as therapeutic agents. The first pharmacologically effective pure chemical, morphine, was created some 0 years ago using opium that was derived from the papaver somniferum poppy's seed pods. This finding demonstrated that, regardless of the material's origin or age, medicines derived from plants may be refined and used in exact quantities. When penicillin was discovered, this strategy has been improved.

Products derived from plants and other natural sources, as well as analogs inspired by them, have made a significant contribution to the commercial medicine preparations of today. Antibiotics are just a few examples, along with the cardiac stimulant digoxin from foxglove, salicylic acid, a precursor to aspirin, derived from willow bark, reserpine, an antipsychotic and antihypertensive medication from Rauwolfia spp., and antimalarials like quinine from Cinchona bark and lipid-lowering agents from a fungus. Also, almost % of cancer treatments that are available or being tested are based on natural ingredients. More than % of the 7 cancer medications licensed globally for use are based on natural substances or their mimics, many of which have undergone combinatorial chemistry improvement. The Pacific yew tree's paclitaxel, the Chinese "happy tree" Camptotheca acuminata's camptothecin, which is used to make irinotecan and topotecan, and the South African bush willow's combretastatin are all examples of plants that have been employed as cancer therapies. Around % of medications given globally are thought to be made from plants, and there are now 1 such active substances in use.

Herbal remedies and the Aging Population

In many affluent nations, the average life expectancy at birth has climbed from roughly years in the early s to around years. As a result, the proportion of senior citizens in our populations is rising. As our population ages, the burden of chronic age-related illness and reliance grows. Aging is linked to a gradual loss of physiological function and a higher risk of pathological alterations that may result in cancer, cardiovascular disease, dementia, diabetes, osteoporosis, and other diseases. Nutrition and exercise are essential lifestyle elements that affect the quality and length of a healthy life as well as how chronic illnesses are treated. The likelihood that there is no one cause of aging is high, and several aging theories have been put out through time. While genetics play a significant role in aging, the oxidative stress hypothesis is the one that has the most scientific evidence to back it up. According to this idea, the DNA, lipids, and proteins that make up cells are damaged by reactive oxygen species when they interact with them, leading to irreversible oxidation-induced aging. Although while oxidative stress has been determined to be unrelated to the aging process itself, extremely frequent chronic age-related disorders all exhibit elevated levels of oxidative stress. Herbs' claimed medicinal properties may be at least partially attributed to their antioxidant content [5].

The "conventional" procedures of identifying and preparing herbs need to be replaced with more precise and repeatable techniques in light of the rising popularity of herbal medicine in order to guarantee the product's quality, safety, and consistency. The regulation of the manufacture and marketing of herbal supplements and medications has to be given attention given their commercial worth, possible toxicity, and growing consumer demand, especially among the ill and elderly parts of our communities.

DISCUSSION

Herbal Remedies: Difficulties and Rules

The WHO has acknowledged the significant role traditional medicine plays in delivering vital care. The European Scientific Cooperative on Phytotherapy was founded in with the goal of advancing the scientific status and harmonization of phytomedicines at the European level. In, the U.S. Congress established the Office of Alternative Medicine within the National Institutes of Health to encourage scientific research in the field of traditional medicine. An increase in funding for the analysis of herbal medicines resulted from this. In the fiscal year , the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine at the National Institutes of Health in the United States spent about US$ million on herbal remedies; in the same year, the National Canadian Institute invested nearly US$ million in the research of a variety of conventional treatments. While this level of investment pales in comparison to the pharmaceutical industry's overall R&D costs, it still demonstrates real interest on the part of the public, business, and government. Two key areas of worry emerge that pose significant difficulties when traditional medicine usage and interest both increase dramatically globally. The control of the cultivation and use of herbs, as well as their quality, safety, and scientific support for health claims, are all governed by national and international laws [6], [7].

National Policy and International Diversity

Evaluation and regulation of herbal medicines are very difficult due to the variety of national herbal medicine practices, extensive histories, and holistic approaches. In addition, a wide variety of herbs are used. There are various challenges in establishing legal standards to include traditionally used herbal remedies in vetted medical treatments. The World Health Organization identified the following problems with herbal medicines in a survey that was conducted in 9 countries: a dearth of research data, proper mechanisms for controlling herbal medicines, education and training, knowledge within the national health authorities and control agency, information sharing, safety monitoring, and techniques to assess their safety and efficacy. Information sharing on regulatory issues, workshops on herbal medicine safety monitoring, general guidelines on research and evaluation of herbal medicines, the provision of databases, workshops on herbal medicine regulation, and international meetings are all examples of the support that is required from various nations.

Assuring the establishment of the necessary regulatory and legal mechanisms for promoting and maintaining good practice, assuring the authenticity, safety, and efficacy of traditional medicines and therapies, and ensuring equitable access to health care resources and their resource information are all based on national policies. Harmonization of the market for herbal medicines for business, medical experts, and consumers is another essential prerequisite. As a consequence, the conventional knowledge present in each location affects information on clinical reasons for their usage, effectiveness, and safety. A short explanation of the laws in United States, Canada, and Europe is presented in this part, and might be used to influence the legal elements of the herbal medicine sector in other nations [8].

According to the Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act of , any herb, botanical and natural concentration, metabolite, and extract ingredient are considered dietary supplements in the United States. Dietary supplements do not require clearance from the Food and Drug Administration before they are sold. The FDA does not have the ability to demand that herbal medicines, which are considered dietary supplements and are thus deemed safe under the DSHEA, be certified for safety and effectiveness prior to their release into the market, as is the situation with medications. As a result, it is the responsibility of the herbal medicine maker to ensure that the dietary supplements produced or supplied are safe and that any statements or claims made about them are supported by sufficient data to demonstrate that they are not incorrect or deceptive.

Nonetheless, it may be necessary for a dietary supplement producer or distributor to undergo premarket assessment for safety data and other information if the supplement contains a "novel dietary component," which is an ingredient that was not sold in the United States prior to October. Also, the FDA's existing good manufacturing practice standards, which lay out steps to ensure the quality of supplements intended for sale, must be followed by all domestic and international businesses that produce package labels or handle dietary supplements. Addressing contamination, the FDA has established certain guideline limits in other foods but has not released any rules addressing acceptable or hazardous levels of contaminants in dietary supplements. Without specific FDA clearance, a product being marketed as an herbal supplement in the US cannot imply on its label or in any of its packaging that it may diagnose, treat, prevent, or cure a particular illness or condition. A claim also cannot imply that a normal state or process, such aging, has an impact on an aberrant disease.

The Natural Health Products Regulations in Canada apply to herbal treatments. All natural goods must get a product license in accordance with these laws in order to be sold in Canada. Detailed information on the medicinal substances, source, strength, nonmedicinal compounds, and suggested usage must be provided in order to get a license. After a product has received a license, it must display the license number and adhere to accepted labeling guidelines so that customers may make educated decisions. Also, individuals that produce, package, label, and import herbal medications need a site license. GMPs must also be used to guarantee the safety and quality of the final product. In order to achieve this, the necessary standards and procedures must be followed throughout the production, storage, handling, and distribution of natural health products. The GMPs are designed to be outcome-based, providing safe and high-quality goods while allowing for the freedom to use quality control methods that are suitable for the product line and company. Product license holders are obligated to keep track of any adverse responses connected to their product and notify the Canadian Department of Health of any major adverse reactions [9], [10].

The European Directive EC, which was published in by the Council of Europe and the European Parliament, lays out rules for the use of herbal medicines in Europe. According to the directive, herbal medicines that are put on the market need clearance from the national regulatory agencies of each European nation and must meet certain standards for safety and effectiveness. The use of the product for therapeutic purposes for at least years in the European Union, at least years within the EU, and years outside the EU is required for the registration of herbal medicinal medicines. Products must meet the same standards as applications for a marketing authorization with respect to how they are made and their quality. Information is based on publicly accessible, current science-based monographs from the European Pharmacopeia and their industry-developed counterparts. The criteria proposed allow for the definition of product quality as well as the eradication of dangerous substances, adulteration, and contamination. A number of committees were established inside the EU to try to

standardize the data and recommendations pertaining to herbal medicines. There have been many different types of materials created, including monographs on herbs and preparations, guidelines on good agricultural and collection practices for starting materials with herbal origins, and guidelines on standardizing applications and setting up practical approaches for identification and quantitative determination of herbal preparations and their intricate compositions.

Quality, Security, and Evidence from the Sciences

Throughout the years, herbal medicine has been widely utilized for the treatment, control, and promotion of health, as well as for extending and improving life expectancy. Nevertheless, there isn't a well-established method for evaluating their efficacy and safety. Herbal medicine is highly appealing to many people due to the holistic approach to healthcare, but scientific assessment is quite difficult due to the large number of considerations that must be made. While many people think herbal medications are harmless, they are often combined and derived from plant sources, each of which has a unique variety of species, growth circumstances, and biologically active ingredients. Herbal extracts may be adulterated, polluted, or contain harmful substances. The safety and effectiveness of herbal medications are directly impacted by their quality control. Yet, there is little information available on the make-up and effectiveness of the majority of herbal medicines, not only because there are insufficient laws or regulations, but also because there is no suitable or widely acknowledged research approach for assessing traditional medicines. Also, very little study has been done on complete herbal mixes since the procedure for approving drugs does not allow for the consideration of undifferentiated mixtures of organic substances. It would take a lot of time and money to separate each active element from each plant, making it uneconomical for producers [11].

Another issue is that certain herbal items on the market are likely to be of poor quality and questionable effectiveness, even when the herb has been demonstrated to have an impact in controlled research employing high-quality product. This is true even though botanical diets and herbal supplements are popular. Being natural products, herbs are thought to be intrinsically safe with no known negative effects and to be effective at a variety of dosages. There are no fixed "doses" for herbs, and it is conceivable for them to interact with other drugs or other medicines, even though they may have unfavorable side effects.

The availability of numerous active components in botanicals that combined may provide a potentiating effect that may not be possible with any one molecule is a significant potential benefit above traditional single-component medications. The separation and identification of active ingredients face a particular hurdle as a result of this advantage. To validate in vivo activity, compounds discovered using activity-guided fractionation must be evaluated in the right animal models. Plants should be grown specifically for the production of botanical extracts under controlled conditions, originate from a characterized and uniform genetic source, and have a taxonomic record of the genus, species, and cultivar or other additional identifiers. Additionally, the composition of the total botanical extract should ideally be standardized and free of any potential hazards.

The source of the seed, the locations and circumstances of production, and any exposure to potential chemical treatments like pesticides should all be documented. Botanical extracts may vary from year to year and may be considerably altered by temperature, drought, or flood as well as by geographic location since the environment can significantly affect phytochemical profiles and the effectiveness of the botanical end product. To guarantee that a consistent source is utilized to generate a plant, biochemical profiling must be employed. The process of concentrating active chemicals to a suitable level may be difficult and have a detrimental

impact on the solubility and bioavailability of such molecules. As a result, raising concentration to improve effectiveness may be counterproductive, and the usage of solubilizers and bioenhancers must be taken into account much as with medication use. Yet, doing so presents significant difficulties. Because of this, it is difficult to standardize botanicals, while some may be created to have a certain level of a key ingredient or group of ingredients, as ginsenosides for ginseng products or anthocyanins for bilberry products. Even while a standard level has been agreed upon or proposed for such important substances, there is no assurance that particular commercial items will contain it.

Another intriguing thing to think about is the fact that herbal ingredients for commercial goods are gathered from populations of wild plants and grown medical plants. The growing demand for herbal products might encourage overharvesting of plants and endanger biodiversity. The extinction of endangered plant species and the depletion of natural resources are both possible consequences of improperly managed gathering and cultivation activities. According to some estimates, 0 of the, 0–, 0 medicinal plant species are in danger of becoming extinct. Both plant populations and knowledge of how to prepare and utilize herbs for therapeutic reasons are being preserved thanks to the work of the Botanic Gardens Conservation International.

NEEDS FOR RESEARCH

The immense market size and potential health advantages of herbal medicines help to balance the field's massive research demands. Research is required to examine the many herbs that are used often in terms of their quality, safety, molecular effects, and therapeutic effectiveness. The necessary testing foundation for this is provided by recently developed scientific methodologies, several of which are covered in this book. The final authenticity and quality control of herbal items is now possible employing genomic testing and chemical fingerprinting methods using hyphenated testing systems. They should be regulated to be used to protect consumers, but until enough scientific information from controlled and experimental human trials accumulates, uncertainties about their effectiveness will persist. The majority of the time, investigations showing a biological activity in a relevant in vitro bioassay or tests employing animal models serve as the foundation for the evidence for the possible protective benefits of certain herbs. Epidemiological research and a sparse number of intervention trials in people have in certain circumstances been used to substantiate this.

In general, research on traditional herbal remedies conducted internationally should adhere to the same ethical standards as other research involving human beings and exchange data with other nations. Collaboration, social value, scientific validity, fair subject selection, a favorable risk-benefit ratio, independent evaluation, informed consent, and consideration for the subjects should all be part of this. The difficulties, time, and expense of conducting large, controlled human trials on a herb's clinical usefulness, particularly if the goal is health promotion, are prohibitive. Consequently, it is critical to create new biomarkers with stronger links to outcomes related to health. It is necessary to develop predictor biomarkers and modest but observable indicators of early cellular change that may be linked to the emergence of certain illnesses.

There must be research-based proof as to whether entire herbs or extracted chemicals are superior in order to overcome the difficulties of finding the active compounds in plants. Because to the prevalence of polypharmacy and polyherbacy, the problem of herb-herb and herb-drug interactions is also a significant one that calls for further attention and research. The bioavailability and effectiveness of herbal components may be impacted by the application of emerging technologies, such as nanotechnology and innovative emulsification techniques, in the formulation of herbal products, and this requires more research. Innovative tools for finding

novel natural product drugs include metabolic engineering and smart screening techniques. Future drug development might benefit greatly from improvements in fast genomic sequencing combined with biosynthetic pathway alteration. In order to see whether they may be improved for more effectiveness and fewer side effects, certain drugs that failed previous studies may be given another chance to be investigated and rebuilt utilizing new technology. For instance, maytansine, a compound discovered in the early s from the Ethiopian plant Maytenus serrata, showed promise in preclinical testing but was abandoned from further research in the early s when it failed to show promise in clinical trials. Subsequently, researchers discovered related compounds called ansamitocins from a microbial source. A maytansine derivative called DM1 has been combined with a monoclonal antibody and is now being tested for prostate cancer [12].

CONCLUSION

Plants, herbs, and ethnobotanicals have been utilized for health promotion and illness treatment since the dawn of humans and are being used today in many parts of the globe. The foundation of contemporary medicine today is made up of plants and other natural resources, which also significantly influence how commercial medication formulations are made today. Yet, plants are often employed in healthcare rather than pharmaceuticals. Some people prefer using herbal remedies as a kind of medication. Some utilize herbs as a complementary treatment to traditional medications. Unfortunately, the only accessible or inexpensive form of healthcare in many underdeveloped nations is traditional medicine, of which herbal medicine is a vital component. Whatever the motivation, those who use herbal remedies should be sure the items they purchase are secure and contain what they claim to, whether this is a specific plant or a specified quantity of a certain herbal component. Science-based information on dose, contraindications, and effectiveness should also be provided to consumers. Global legal harmonization is required to do this in order to direct the ethical production and distribution of herbal medicines. If a herb has adequate scientific support, then suitable laws should permit this to be utilized to promote its usage so that these advantages may be achieved for the promotion of public health and the treatment of illness.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. S. Wanjari and D. S. Wanjari, “An Overview on Herbal Medicine,” *Res. J. Pharmacogn. Phytochem.*, 2019, doi: 10.5958/0975-4385.2019.00003.7.

[2] A. . Fallis, “Overview of herbal medicine and dietary supplements,” *J. Chem. Inf. Model.*, 2016.

[3] C. xiao Liu, “Overview on development of ASEAN traditional and herbal medicines,” *Chinese Herbal Medicines*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.chmed.2021.09.002.

[4] J. W. Lee, M. K. Hyun, H. J. Kim, and D. Il Kim, “Acupuncture and herbal medicine for female infertility: an overview of systematic reviews,” *Integrative Medicine Research*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.imr.2020.100694.

[5] X. C. Jin *et al.*, “An Overview of Systematic Reviews of Chinese Herbal Medicine for Parkinson’s Disease,” *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2019. doi: 10.3389/fphar.2019.00155.

[6] M. El Hajj and L. Holst, “Herbal Medicine Use During Pregnancy: A Review of the Literature With a Special Focus on Sub-Saharan Africa,” *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2020. doi: 10.3389/fphar.2020.00866.

[7] M. Akbaribazm, N. Goodarzi, and M. Rahimi, “Female infertility and herbal medicine: An overview of the new findings,” *Food Science and Nutrition*. 2021. doi: 10.1002/fsn3.2523.

[8] N. Touiti, T. S. Houssaini, and S. Achour, “Overview on pharmacovigilance of nephrotoxic herbal medicines used worldwide,” *Clin. Phytoscience*, 2021, doi: 10.1186/s40816-021-00248-6.

[9] K. P. Osemene, A. A. Elujoba, and M. O. Ilori, “An overview of herbal medicine research and development in Nigeria,” *Res. J. Med. Sci.*, 2011, doi: 10.3923/rjmsci.2011.228.232.

[10] F. Y. Kurniawan, M. Jalil, A. Purwantoro, B. S. Daryono, and Purnomo, “Jamu Kunir Asem: Ethnomedicine Overview by Javanese Herbal Medicine Formers in Yogyakarta,” *J. Jamu Indones.*, 2021, doi: 10.29244/jji.v6i1.211.

[11] Y. Zhao and Y. Liu, “A mechanistic overview of herbal medicine and botanical compounds to target transcriptional factors in Breast cancer,” *Pharmacological Research*. 2018. doi: 10.1016/j.phrs.2017.12.027.

[12] M. Mosihuzzaman, “Herbal medicine in healthcare-an overview,” *Natural Product Communications*. 2012. doi: 10.1177/1934578x1200700628.

CHAPTER 9

ANTIOXIDANTS FOUND IN HERBS AND SPICES ARE CRUCIAL FOR OXIDATIVE STRESS AND REDOX SIGNALING

Malathi.H, Assistant Professor
Department of Life Science, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- h.malathi@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Antioxidants are organic substances produced by plants that react with free radicals and neutralize them, lowering oxidative stress and inflammation. Spices and herbs are the most effective antioxidant foods on the planet that can be simply added to different cuisines, improving taste and health benefits. There is now plenty of proof that spices and herbs have cognitive- and mood-affecting characteristics in addition to antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antitumorigenic, and cholesterol- and glucose-lowering capabilities.

KEYWORDS:

Oxidative Stress, Herbal Medicine, Environment, Monographs, Traditional Medicine.

INTRODUCTION

Traditional definitions of herbs and spices include any portion of a plant that is consumed for its flavor rather than for its nutritional value. Yet more recently, it has been shown that herbs and spices are sources of many different phytochemicals, many of which have potent antioxidant activity. As a result, redox signaling and antioxidant defense may benefit from the use of herbs and spices [1]. Antioxidants and oxidative stress are often portrayed in a way that is much too simplistic in both academic and popular literature. Initially, all functional components of reactive oxygen species are grouped together. However there are several ROS that play distinct and crucial functions in healthy physiology and are necessary for a wide range of physiological activities. The many ROS that are present cannot, in general, replace one another in these physiological tasks. The genesis of illnesses including cancer, atherosclerosis, neurological disorders, infections, chronic inflammatory diseases, diabetes, and autoimmune diseases is also significantly linked to various ROS. Second, the several antioxidants that are known to exist are often seen as a single functional group. Yet, the many endogenous antioxidants that the body produces generally cannot replace one another. They have special chemical and physiological features that guarantee all portions of the cells and the organs or tissues are protected against oxidative damage. Nutritional antioxidants may also be consumed, and the two main classes of chemicals are polyphenols and carotenoids. They are created by plants to defend plant cells from oxidative damage and serve various purposes.

Given the complexity of antioxidants and ROS, it is highly improbable that a single, high dose of one or a few specific antioxidants, such as vitamin C, vitamin E, or -carotene, would be able to protect every component of cells, organs, and tissues from oxidative stress and damage while preserving all of the diverse normal and advantageous functions of ROS. Antioxidant supplementation has, in fact, often had little effect or even negatively impacted illness outcomes. Recent reviews and meta-analyses have shown that there is a substantial amount of data proving that taking more vitamin C, vitamin E, or beta-carotene has no positive effects. Testing the potential health benefits of antioxidant-rich foods would be an alternative and much more reliable antioxidant strategy to test protection against oxidative stress and related diseases because these foods typically contain a large combination of different antioxidants that are

selected, through plant evolution, to protect every part of the plant cells against oxidative damage. This is particularly important for spices and herbs. The purpose of this chapter is to investigate the probable function of antioxidants in herbs and spices in normal physiology, oxidative stress, and associated illnesses. We briefly introduce ROS and their function in healthy physiology and oxidative stress before presenting research showing that herbs and spices are the most potent dietary source of antioxidants known. The chapter is concluded with a review of the possible contribution of antioxidants found in herbs and spices to oxidative stress [2].

Complex roles of reactive oxygen species in normal physiology

ROS molecules are just reactive molecules that include oxygen. Free-radical ROS and nonradical ROS are two different categories. Superoxide and the hydroxyl radical are two examples of free-radical ROS, which are molecules with unpaired electrons in their outer orbits. Unpaired electrons are not present in nonradical ROS, but they are chemically reactive and may be changed into free-radical ROS. Hydrogen peroxide is a nonradical ROS instance.

Reactive oxygen species' function in cell signaling

Cells must be able to perceive their immediate environment in order to adapt their activity to the microenvironment. Cell signaling is used to achieve this. A fundamental signaling route controls the actions of proteins along the pathway to transmit a signal throughout the cell. A chemical known as a "mediator" or "second messenger" encourages a particular stage in a signaling cascade. At various points throughout signaling pathways, ROS has been characterized as serving various functions. The ROS molecules have been referred to as the "initiator," the first stimulus that initiates the cascade of a signaling pathway, as well as the "effector," the last stage of a signaling pathway. As a signal relaying molecule or by encouraging a signaling pathway step, ROS may also be implicated anywhere along the signaling route between its beginning and its conclusion. ROS may be seen as the pathway's specific mediator in both situations. Yet, in order for ROS to serve as signaling mediators, they must be generated where and when they are required, recognized by a mechanism, and quickly eliminated to prevent the signal from persisting.

Reactive Oxygen Generation Species

As oxygen is reduced to water, ROS molecules are generated. Superoxide is produced by adding one electron to oxygen, while hydrogen peroxide is produced by further reduction. Exercise, chemotherapy, UV radiation, environmental pollutants, and other endogenous or exogenous stressors may all result in the production of ROS. Several cellular compartments include enzymes such nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate, oxidases, nitric oxide synthase, and xanthine oxidase, as well as the mitochondria's electron transport chain, which consciously produces ROS [3].

NADPH oxidases are seven in number. These transmembrane proteins generate hydrogen peroxide or superoxide. Superoxide is created by the oxidases NOX1 through 5 when an electron is transferred from NADPH to oxygen across the membrane. The DUOX1-2 enzymes are calcium-dependent enzymes that also transfer an electron from NADPH to create hydrogen peroxide directly thanks to a peroxide-like subunit on the membrane's outer side. The cellular compartmentalization, upstream activators, and related subunits of the enzymes also vary. Growth hormones, cytokines, and vitamin D are all recognized inducers of NOX.

The notion that mitochondria only create ROS as an unwelcome by-product of energy synthesis in the electron transfer chain has persisted for a long time. Yet, the mitochondria also

purposefully produce ROS. This happens in part because NO inhibits cytochrome c oxidase, increasing superoxide generation without decreasing energy production. Superoxide is changed into hydrogen peroxide by mitochondrial superoxide dismutase, which may cross the membrane and participate in cytosolic signaling.

Reactive Oxygen Species Perceived

Protein synthesis, stability, or functionality may all be affected by ROS. The activity of transcription factors in the nucleus may change depending on the redox condition. An oxidized transcription factor cannot attach to DNA and will not be able to stimulate transcription, but a reduced transcription factor can bind to deoxyribonucleic acid and do so. The oxidation of proteasomes may also have an impact on the stability of proteins. Proteasomes may become inactive and unable to breakdown proteins as a result of oxidation, which would maintain or increase the quantity of proteins. The following three methods may all be used to modify the function of proteins and molecules via oxidation: Proteins, like thioredoxin, may undergo oxidation, which changes the protein's function directly. A chaperone protein that typically prevents protein activity is the target of oxidation; during oxidation, the protein might separate from its inhibitor and subsequently become active. Oxidation may affect phosphatases and kinases, which can then change the activity of proteins via posttranslational changes. In contrast to the various kinases, protein tyrosine phosphatases are often inactivated by oxidation. Cysteine residues are the most frequent targets of oxidation, while tyrosine and methionine are also potential targets. Target molecules may suffer permanent oxidative damage if they are further oxidized. Thiol bridges may be formed to shield oxidized cysteine residues from further oxidation [4].

In phagocytosis, ROS is an effector that is created by NOX2 within the phagosome to destroy phagocytozed microorganisms. Transcription factors, redox sensors, and phosphatases/kinases are a few of the targets of ROS in signaling pathways. Nuclear receptors like the estrogen receptor and transcription regulators like Nrf2, NF-B, p, AP-1, and cyclic adenosine monophosphate response element binding are examples of transcription regulators. Thioredoxin, glutharedoxins, peroxiredoxins, glutathione, and redox effector factor-1 are examples of redox sensors, while PTP, Akt, JNK, ERK, Src, and CDK are examples of phosphatases/kinases. Complex systems of antioxidants have developed to combat the potential damaging effects of ROS and allow ROS to function in signaling pathways. The compartmentalization of the many antioxidants within this system and the elimination of particular ROS both reflect its high level of specialization. Please refer to the outstanding work by Halliwell and Gutteridge for a study of several antioxidant systems.

Reactive Oxygen Species' Dual Roles in Pathologies

Many chronic degenerative disorders, including malignancies, type 2 diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, neurological diseases, obesity, and hypertension, have been linked to elevated levels of ROS. ROS, however, may have many functions in a variety of diseases.

Reactive oxygen species in rheumatoid arthritis

Dual functions of ROS have been established in several forms of autoimmune disorders. Most often, reducing ROS levels was the main goal when treating conditions like rheumatoid arthritis. As NOX2 has been shown to generate ROS in rheumatoid arthritis, it would naturally be a target for treatment. In a mouse rheumatoid arthritis model, it was shown that animals with defective NOX2 produced less ROS, however these mice had worsened rather than improved rheumatoid arthritis symptoms. These animals had more active T cells, and it was discovered that the inability of the macrophage to suppress T-cell activity was caused by NOX2

malfunction in these cells. The altered T-cell activation was reversed and the enhanced rheumatoid arthritis symptoms were reduced by restoring ROS signaling in the macrophages [5].

Reactive oxygen species exploitation Cancer cells use signaling to survive and develop

Low ROS levels are seen in healthy cells. It is commonly accepted that increased ROS, such as those brought on by inflammation or environmental causes, increase DNA mutations and hence the risk of cancer. To ensure that the cell does not reach the ROS threshold for cell death, the increased quantity of ROS in cancer cells is counterbalanced by a heightened defense against ROS. Signaling pathways that promote cell growth, migration, and proliferation are activated when ROS levels rise. Also, a lot of cancer treatments cause high levels of ROS that go beyond the ROS threshold and kill cancer cells. Antioxidants may, thus, potentially stop normal cells from developing into malignant cells, but they may also theoretically reduce the effectiveness of cancer treatments.

DISCUSSION

Reactive oxygen species' beneficial effects during exercise

Many adaptive reactions connected to the elevated amount of ROS generation by mitochondria take place during exercise. Increased antioxidant defense, improved insulin sensitivity in muscle, and mitochondrial biogenesis are a few of these changes. So, despite the fact that exercise is known to increase the formation of ROS, physical activity and exercise lower the risk of a number of illnesses. Ristow and colleagues conducted a research that provided fresh insight into how exercise affects ROS formation. In their clinical research, participants were randomly assigned to either eat high dosages of vitamin C and E supplements or a placebo while engaging in an exercise schedule. Participants were either previously trained or untrained. It has been discovered that exercise increases ROS, ROS defense, and insulin sensitivity. The participants who had taken vitamin C and E supplements did not experience these effects, however. Also, these disparities were most apparent in the patients who had never received training. These findings imply an essential role for adaptive responses to ROS in mediating the health benefits of exercise [6], [7].

Dietary Antioxidants Play A Role In Oxidative Stress

Given the two functions of ROS that were discussed in Section 2.3 as well as the wide range of ROS and underlying processes, it is obvious that a significant intake of a single antioxidant would not be anticipated to have any positive effects. As antioxidant-rich meals often include a huge variety of various antioxidants, which are chosen during plant evolution to protect every component of the plant cells against oxidative damage, this is an alternate and far more plausible mechanism. Also, this "bundle" of antioxidants has far lower concentrations than are generally seen in antioxidant supplements. These antioxidants also have various activities. Consequently, we propose that dietary antioxidants consumed in their natural food form may lower risk of chronic illnesses without impairing ROS' regular operations.

Dietary plants contain a large number of antioxidants. There are up to naturally occurring variations of carotenoids, which are found in all plant species. The majority of the fruits and vegetables that people regularly eat contain at least carotenoids. The primary carotenoids found in the diet are lycopene, the hydroxy carotenoids lutein and zeaxanthin, and the pro-vitamin A carotenoids - and -carotene, -cryptoxanthin, and -carotene. Its primary function in plants is to capture light as auxiliary elements and quench excited molecules like singlet oxygen that may be produced during photosynthesis. Also common in food-producing plants are phenolic

chemicals. They are produced in a wide range and belong to a number of molecular families, including lignans, coumarins, stilbenes, proanthocyanidins, flavonoids, and lignins. There are around plant phenols known to exist. Since their phenolic hydroxyl groups may donate hydrogen, plant phenols have the antioxidant qualities.

We postulate that meals high in antioxidants may be advantageous and provide a balanced mix of different antioxidants in the right amounts to guard against excessive oxidative stress and oxidative damage without interfering with ROS' typical function. We must first select foods that are high in total antioxidant content, or foods that are antioxidant-rich, in order to test this theory. In order to determine the total antioxidant content of more than items, we execute a thorough screening. We can determine the overall antioxidant content of complicated meals using this new and special antioxidant food table. We can also discover and rank prospective sources of antioxidants, as well as provide the scientific community information on the relative antioxidant capacity of a variety of foods [8], [9].

The antioxidant activity that follows in the target cell does not always follow from the antioxidant content of the food sample that was ingested. The food matrix and food preparation techniques, as well as absorption, metabolism, and catabolism, are factors that affect the bioavailability of phytochemical antioxidants. The current study identifies food samples with significant antioxidant content, but more research into each particular item is required to pinpoint those samples that could have biological significance and the processes behind antioxidant activity. Preclinical research on bioavailability and bioefficacy, clinical trials, mechanistic cell-culture studies, and research with experimental animals are all ongoing.

Largest Density of Antioxidants Contained In Spices and Herbs: Total Antioxidant Content of Foods and Drinks

The findings of our investigation reveal significant differences both within and across food categories; each food category has items that are essentially devoid of antioxidants. For the antioxidant findings on all goods examined, please refer to the antioxidant food table released as an electronic supplement to the study by. It's interesting to note that the majority of the antioxidant-rich goods examined in the research fall under the "spices and herbs" and "herbal/traditional plant medicine" categories. The categories "berries and berry products," "fruit and fruit juices," "nuts and seeds," "breakfast cereals," "chocolate and sweets," "drinks," and "vegetables and vegetable products" comprise most of the typical foods and beverages, which have medium to high antioxidant levels. We discover that meals made from plants often contain more antioxidants than those made from animals or from a combination of both, with median antioxidant levels of 0., 0., and 0. mmol/0 g, respectively. Moreover, the criterion for plant-based foods' th percentile antioxidant concentration is 4. mmol/0 g, as opposed to 0. and 0. mmol/0 g for animal-based and mixed diets, respectively. The minority of goods with very high antioxidant values, found among plant medicines, spices, and herbs, are responsible for the high mean value of plant-based diets.

Antioxidant Totals Contained In Herbs and Spices

The category in the current research with the highest antioxidant content is herbal/traditional plant medicine, which also has the widest product range. The mean and median values are .7 and .2 mmol/0 g, respectively, and more than half of the items had antioxidant concentrations over the th percentile of the full food table. India, Japan, Mexico, and Peru are the countries from where the items are sourced. Sangre de grado from Peru has the greatest antioxidant concentration of all the items in the database. Triphala, amalaki, and arjuna from India and goshuyu-tou, a traditional kampo medicine from Japan, both have high levels of antioxidants

with antioxidant values ranging from 2.6 to 6.3 mmol/0 g. In this category, only four items have values that are less than 2.0 mmol/0 g.

In herbal and conventional plant medicine, antioxidants

The survey comprises herbs and spices from distinct producers or nations. While distinct items vary from 0 to 5 mmol/0 g in total antioxidant capacity, the differences range from 0. mmol/0 g for raw garlic paste bought in Japan to 5 mmol/0 g for dried and powdered clove purchased in Norway. With mean values ranging from to 7 mmol/0 g, dried and ground spices peppermint, allspice, cinnamon, oregano, thyme, sage, rosemary, saffron, and estragon are in order of decreasing mean antioxidant value. Clove has the greatest mean antioxidant value. Oregano, rosemary, and thyme show lower levels in the range of 2.2-5.6 mmol/0 g when evaluated in fresh samples compared to the dried herbs. The same is true for parsley, dill, chives, basil, and cilantro. We examined many plants in addition to conventional spices and culinary herbs, including birch leaves, wild marjoram, and wood cranesbill. The majority of the examined spices and herbs have very high antioxidant contents. Although if they don't add much weight to the dinner plate, spices and herbs may nevertheless be significant sources of antioxidant consumption, particularly in diets where they are often utilized. We interpret the higher antioxidant concentrations in certain dried herbs as compared to fresh samples as a natural result of the drying process, which preserves the majority of the antioxidants in the final dried product [10].

Potential Health Effects of Dietary Antioxidants

In terms of potential health impacts, only a small number of spices have been fairly well investigated. The commercially available spices with the greatest overall antioxidant content are clove, oregano, and thyme. A number of the phytochemicals present in these spices, including rosmarinic acid in thyme and oregano, eugenol in clove and allspice, and gallic acid in clove, have been found to be NF-B inhibitors. NF-B is a transcription factor that is essential for the coordination of immune and inflammatory responses. In a colitis model, thyme and oregano essential oils together reduced IL-1 and IL-6 levels as well as inflammation-associated tissue damage, all of which may also be connected to NF-B. We discovered that an extract of clove, oregano, and thyme, together with walnuts and coffee, inhibited NF-B activation in transgenic mice both in vitro and in vivo in a synergistic manner. Moreover, it has been shown that thyme increases or maintains liver levels of endogenous cytoprotective proteins. This is consistent with a research by Kluth et al. in which they found that thyme, allspice, or clove extracts in vitro stimulated transcription linked to phases I and/or II.

We and others have discovered various phytochemicals to be similarly or even more effective inhibitors of NF-B when compared to traditional anti-inflammatory medications, such as ibuprofen and dexamethasone, further demonstrating the effectiveness of phytochemicals. The number of research looking into the potential health effects of individual phytochemicals derived from herbs or spices is substantially larger than the literature on the effects of entire herbs or spices or extracts of whole herbs or spices.

Among the most extensively researched phytochemicals are resveratrol, curcumin, genistein, capsaicin, epigallocatechin gallate, quercetin, beta-carotene, and lycopene. The activity of numerous cell signaling pathways may be changed by phytochemicals, which can modulate inflammatory processes, control cytoprotective mechanisms, and control cell development and differentiation. The majority of items labeled as herbal and conventional plant remedies are likewise based on foods that are high in antioxidants or on isolated phytochemicals [11].

In our analysis of diverse diets, herbal and traditional plant remedies showed up as several of the highest antioxidant-containing goods. We hypothesize that a significant factor in a herb's therapeutic benefits is a highly intrinsic antioxidant property. In our research, we found that the sap from the tree trunks of the Croton lechleri species, which was collected in Peru, has an incredibly high antioxidant concentration. Indigenous people in South America have long used the sap of this tree as a medicine with antifungal, antimicrobial, antiviral, and antihemorrhagic properties. Major components of this sap include proanthocyanidins, and studies have indicated that sangre de grado speeds up the healing of stomach ulcers, increases apoptosis in cancer cells, and inhibits the production of a variety of proinflammatory cytokines and mediators. Triphala, an Indian Ayurveda herbal composition, which has been shown to have anti-inflammatory action, antibacterial and wound-healing capabilities, and cancer chemopreventive potential, are other herbal medications that are exceptionally rich in antioxidants. Although goshuyu-tou, a traditional kampo medication, has been demonstrated to drastically reduce the extracellular concentration of NO in lipopolysaccharide-stimulated RAW 4.7 cells, Arjuna, another Ayurveda recipe, has been proven to offer health advantages.

Both Cinnamomi cortex and Scutellariae radix are plants that are particularly rich in antioxidants. The herbal remedies saiko-keishi-to, juzaen-taiho-to, and hocyu-ekki-to, which are used for different sorts of inflammatory and infectious disorders, are all taken in a daily dosage of 7.5 g, equating to 1.6, 1.1, and 0.7 mmol antioxidants per day, respectively. The Japanese herbal medication sho-saiko-to, which contains the herbs examined in this research, was shown to have an antioxidant activity of roughly 1.3 mmol/7.5 g. This medication, which is often used to treat chronic hepatitis in Japan, may also prevent the growth of hepatocellular carcinoma, lessen lipid peroxidation, and reduce hepatic fibrosis in test subjects. In Japan, intravenous dosages of up to 0 mL/day of the herbal remedy stronger neo-minophagen C, a glycyrrhizin formulation, have been used widely and with great effectiveness to treat chronic hepatitis. According to our research, this injection volume is equivalent to around 1 mmol of antioxidants. As a result, these injections will increase the body's overall antioxidant capacity. It is tempting to hypothesize that the antioxidant activity of these herbal remedies is the mediating factor for a number of the outcomes seen.

It seems unlikely that all foods high in antioxidants are beneficial bioactive sources, nor are all antioxidants consumed in the diet bioactive. The bioavailability of phytochemicals varies widely from one to another, therefore meals strong in antioxidants may not always result in the maximum amounts of active metabolites in target tissues. The antioxidants obtained from food are made up of a wide variety of molecular compounds and families with various chemical and biological characteristics, such as variations in cellular uptake and metabolism, transport and excretion, and ultimately, their effects on oxidative stress in various cellular compartments. The significant biological effects of plant-based foods' biochemically active phytochemicals are many and unrelated to their antioxidant capacity. As a result, foods lacking in antioxidants may nevertheless be healthy because other dietary components or phytochemicals may exert bioactivity in different ways.

As a normal diet contains more than, 0 bioactive food ingredients, many of which may alter a variety of processes associated with various illnesses, it is difficult to comprehend the complicated function of diet in chronic diseases. Due to the intricacy of this interaction, it is most likely necessary to have a thorough knowledge of the function of these bioactive food components in order to evaluate how dietary plants affect human health and the emergence of illness. A food-based research method is likely to clarify more health impacts than a nutrient-based approach because we contend that both their multiple individual functions and their combined additive or synergistic effects are essential to their favorable effects on human health.

The antioxidant food table is an important research resource for plant-based nutritional research and may be used in epidemiological studies to assign antioxidant levels to reported food consumption. In cell investigations, animal experiments, and clinical trials involving humans, it may also be utilized to examine the synergistic effects of antioxidants. Combining these approaches will help researchers better understand how dietary phytochemical antioxidants contribute to the prevention of chronic illnesses caused by oxidative stress [12].

CONCLUSION

The total amount of antioxidants has been evaluated in more than foods; this gives a vast database to enable research into dietary antioxidants, health, and illness. The findings reveal significant variances both within and across dietary groups. Among the categories that contain the greatest antioxidants are herbs, spices, and herbal medications that are combined. Further investigation is required to determine the biological effects of antioxidant-rich herbs and spices on conditions linked to oxidative stress.

REFERENCES:

[1] K. Srinivasan, "Antioxidant Potential of Spices and Their Active Constituents," *Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition*. 2014. doi: 10.1080/10408398.2011.585525.

[2] B. Ulewicz-Magulska and M. Wesolowski, "Total Phenolic Contents and Antioxidant Potential of Herbs Used for Medical and Culinary Purposes," *Plant Foods Hum. Nutr.*, 2019, doi: 10.1007/s11130-018-0699-5.

[3] M. Starowicz, S. Arpaci, J. Topolska, and M. Wronkowska, "Phytochemicals and antioxidant activity in oat-buckwheat dough and cookies with added spices or herbs," *Molecules*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/molecules26082267.

[4] G. Nieto, "Biological Activities of Three Essential Oils of the Lamiaceae Family," *Medicines*, 2017, doi: 10.3390/medicines4030063.

[5] A. Wojdyło, J. Oszmiański, and R. Czemerys, "Antioxidant activity and phenolic compounds in 32 selected herbs," *Food Chem.*, 2007, doi: 10.1016/j.foodchem.2007.04.038.

[6] A. Vallverdú-Queralt, J. Regueiro, J. F. R. Alvarenga, M. Martinez-Huelamo, L. N. Leal, and R. M. Lamuela-Raventos, "Characterization of the phenolic and antioxidant profiles of selected culinary herbs and spices: Caraway, turmeric, dill, marjoram and nutmeg," *Food Sci. Technol.*, 2015, doi: 10.1590/1678-457X.6580.

[7] N. V. Yanishlieva, E. Marinova, and J. Pokorný, "Natural antioxidants from herbs and spices," *European Journal of Lipid Science and Technology*. 2006. doi: 10.1002/ejlt.200600127.

[8] V. V Panpatil, S. Tattari, N. Kota, C. Nimgulkar, and K. Polasa, "In vitro evaluation on antioxidant and antimicrobial activity of spice extracts of ginger , turmeric and garlic," *2Ginger,1Turmeric,3Garlic(E.Coli,Salmonella)*, 2013.

[9] G. Veerapandi, S. Meenakshi, S. Anitta, C. Arul, P. Ashokkumar, and C. Sekar, "Precise and quick detection of ascorbic acid and eugenol in fruits, pharmaceuticals and medicinal herbs using hydroxyapatite-titanium dioxide nanocomposite-based electrode," *Food Chem.*, 2022, doi: 10.1016/j.foodchem.2022.132251.

[10] S. Singh, "Antioxidants properties of some spices with their chemistry and mechanism of action," *MOJ Biol. Med.*, 2021, doi: 10.15406/mojbm.2021.06.00126.

[11] C. L. Chan, R. Y. Gan, and H. Corke, "The phenolic composition and antioxidant capacity of soluble and bound extracts in selected dietary spices and medicinal herbs," *Int. J. Food Sci. Technol.*, 2016, doi: 10.1111/ijfs.13024.

[12] I. S. Kim, M. R. Yang, O. H. Lee, and S. N. Kang, "Antioxidant activities of hot water extracts from various spices," *Int. J. Mol. Sci.*, 2011, doi: 10.3390/ijms12064120.

CHAPTER 10

STUDY OF THE NUTRITIONAL AND METABOLIC EFFECTS OF ALOE VERA

Renuka Jyothi.S, Assistant Professor
Department of Life Science, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- j.renuka@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Popular and conventional uses of aloe vera date back a long time. It is used in traditional Indian medicine to treat infections, worm infestations, colic, skin conditions, and constipation. Moreover, it is used to treat type 2 diabetes among Mexican Americans and hypertension in Trinidad and Tobago. It is often advocated in Chinese medicine for the treatment of fungi-related illnesses. Aloe vera is one of the few natural remedies that are widely used in Western culture, and it is widely used in the food, drug, and cosmetic sectors. In terms of health, a variety of problems are covered by the therapeutic uses for topical and oral administration of aloe vera, although only a small number of these uses have been the focus of thorough clinical research. Clinical studies using aloe vera have been done for skin problems, burn and wound healing, constipation, diabetes mellitus, and gastrointestinal issues.

KEYWORDS:

Oxidative Stress, Aloe Vera, Antioxidants, Environment, Herbal Medicine, Metabolic.

INTRODUCTION

One of the about 0 species of the genus Aloe, which has been variably identified as a member of the Asphodelaceae, Liliaceae, or Aloaceae families, is Aloe vera. The official name of this plant, which is A. vera Burm.f., is Aloe barbadensis Miller, as per international botanical nomenclature guidelines. Aloe vera is said to have its geographical origins in Sudan, after which it was spread to the Mediterranean region and most other warm regions of the globe. By using this site, you agree to our terms and conditions. By using this site, you agree to our terms and conditions. A Mesopotamian clay tablet from about bce is recognized as being the earliest reliable source of information on aloe as a plant having medicinal benefits. Nevertheless, the Papyrus Ebers, an Egyptian record dating at around bce, has the first comprehensive description of the plant's therapeutic benefits. It lists a number of Aloe-containing treatments for the treatment of both exterior and interior illnesses. The Greek Herbal of Dioscorides has a detailed description of the aloe plant and encourages its usage for treating wounds, hair loss, genital ulcers, and hemorrhoids. In the s, aloe vera was therapeutically used to treat radiation burns to the skin and mucous membranes. Aloe vera was first classified as a purgative and skin protectant by the U.S. pharmacopoeia in . Even today, several nations still use aloe as a significant traditional medicine, including China, India, the West Indies, South Africa, and Japan [1].

Aloe vera is one of the few natural remedies that is often utilized in Western culture, and the production of aloe vera extracts is one of the most important global botanical businesses. The worth of the aloe business was projected to be US$0 billion for finished aloe-containing goods in and US$5 million for the price of raw aloe material. The cosmetic, food, and pharmaceutical sectors all employ aloe vera. It serves as the foundation for many different items in the cosmetic and toiletry industries, including skin moisturizers, soaps, shampoos, sunblock, makeup creams, fragrances, shaving creams, bath aids, and many more. Aloe is used by the food

industry as a bittering agent and in the production of functional meals, particularly health beverages. Pharmaceuticals are offered for oral and topically applied usage.

Theory and Chemical Components

Aloe vera is a perennial succulent xerophyte; it has elongated and pointed leaves that are linked at the stem in a rosette pattern and that grow to approximately - cm in length and cm in width at the base in the mature plant . The mesophyll is surrounded by a thick, green epidermal layer that serves as the leaf's defense. The vascular bundles are found just below the rind and are made up of three different tube structures: the xylem, phloem, and massive pericyclic tubules. The vascular bundle's pericyclic section is attached to the rind, while the remaining portion protrudes into the mesophyll layer.

Chlorenchyma cells and parenchyma cells with thinner walls may be formed from the mesophyll. The parenchyma, which is the largest component of the leaf by volume, includes a transparent mucilaginous gel. The Aloe species with the highest biological activity is thought to be Aloe vera. The plant contains around potentially active ingredients, including enzymes, lignin, saponins, salicylic acids, vitamins, minerals, saccharides, amino acids, anthraquinones, and saccharides [2].

Cultivation and Processing Results

The content of Aloe vera extracts changes according to the plant type, environmental and seasonal fluctuations, and the age of the plant. Yet, the quantity and variety of active chemicals in a product are most significantly impacted by the processing procedure. The entire aloe vera leaf is often crushed, ground, or pressed to create juice in the commercial manufacture of aloe vera products. This juice is then stabilized and filtered through multiple stages to get the required extract. This procedure makes it easier to process and is more effective at recovering the solids, but the product may have few or no active components. Just 9 of the commercial Aloe vera products examined in the investigation had detectable levels of mucilaginous polysaccharide. Just three of the nine commercial Aloe vera gel powders bought from reputable worldwide vendors had adequate levels of Acemannan, a polysaccharide.

Aloe vera's variable polysaccharide content has been linked, in part, to the plant extract being heated over degrees Celsius, which causes pronounced variations in molecular weight. It is nearly difficult to avoid the contamination by leaf exudates during the commercial extraction of Aloe vera gel, which is another problem with the commercial manufacturing method. Lastly, a significant issue for the aloe vera business is the adulteration of aloe vera products utilizing fillers including maltodextrin, glucose, glycerin, and malic acid. The International Aloe Science Council created a certification mechanism to verify the quality and amount of aloe vera in authorized commercial goods in response to such industry misrepresentations.

The Scientific Evidence of Health Effects

Aloe vera is used to treat a variety of ailments, according to its medicinal claims. In the treatment of dermatological and wound-healing diseases, it is often used topically. While whole-leaf and gel oral preparations have received varying recommendations for use as an adjunct to chemotherapy treatment and to treat a variety of disorders including DM, infectious diseases, metastatic cancer, and ulcerative colitis, the oral application of Aloe vera latex is promoted as a laxative. Anecdotal evidence and case reports are the main sources of support for aloe vera's therapeutic use. While the number of clinical studies investigating its efficacy has started to rise, methodological trial quality has not yet been standardized.

Topical Uses

In the earliest case study of Aloe vera's favorable benefits on skin and wound healing, which was published in , fresh whole-leaf extract was shown to completely regenerate skin while also providing immediate relief from the itching and burning associated with severe roentgen dermatitis. The function of topical Aloe vera administration in the therapy of skin disorders and wound healing, including psoriasis, dermatitis, oral mucositis, burn injuries, and surgical wounds, has been examined in several subsequent papers [3].

Dermatological Conditions

Aloe vera may be beneficially recommended in the treatment of skin problems, according to the findings of many clinical research. In a study of wound healing treatment after full-face dermabrasion of acne vulgaris patients, Aloe vera was shown to dramatically speed up the process of reepithelization when combined with a conventional polyethylene wound gel dressing. In a patient, double-blind, randomized, controlled experiment, the cure rate for the Aloe vera group was %, compared to just 7% for the placebo group, for those with persistent psoriasis.

DISCUSSION

Because to the absence of uniformity across commercially available Aloe vera preparations, determining the safety and effectiveness of aloe vera is challenging. Analyzing the ideal dosages of certain Aloe vera preparations for the treatment of particular ailments is also challenging due to the necessity for a more thorough knowledge of the plant's active ingredients. Notwithstanding these difficulties, a recent systematic evaluation of Aloe vera by the Natural Standard Research Collaboration came to the conclusion that topical use of Aloe vera gel or extract is safe for the treatment of mild to severe skin diseases, burns, wounds, and inflammation. Reasonable evidence in humans supports the effectiveness of using Aloe vera topically to burn wounds. There is mixed evidence supporting its use in psoriasis, dermatitis, and surgical wound healing. The Natural Standard Research Collaboration also came to the conclusion that while short-term use of oral aloe latex as a laxative and oral use of aloe vera gel for potential hypoglycemic effects are both potentially safe, prolonged use of the latex is probably unsafe due to a theoretical risk of dehydration and electrolyte imbalance. The cathartic actions of anthraquinone glycosides present in Aloe vera latex are well recognized. Nevertheless, further clinical studies are required to examine the advantages of latex because of the possible safety issues with its usage [4] administration in place of traditional laxative therapies. While early, there is some evidence that aloe vera gel administered orally has a positive impact on ulcerative colitis, type 2 diabetes, and the stabilization of metastatic cancer.

Toxicology

Till date, there haven't been any published reports on the effects of the use of the drug on the human body. In acute oral trials with mice and rats, chemicals produced from aloe vera were not proven to be harmful. In parenteral and intravenous trials, the LD in mice was >0 mg/kg and > mg/kg, while the equivalent LD values in rats were > mg/kg and > mg/kg, respectively. Acemannan was administered intravenously or intraperitoneally at maximal dosage levels of 0 mg/kg in mice and mg/kg in rats over the course of days without causing any detectable toxicity. In male and female rats, respectively, the no observed adverse effect level for whole-leaf Aloe vera powder was .7 and 9.7 mg/kg/day. Aloe vera gel consumption over the whole of a rat's life was shown to have no negative consequences. In contrast, prolonged oral administration of 0 mg/kg of aloe vera to rats led to death, severe sperm loss, inflammation, and reproductive toxicity as compared to control animals. The cosmetic ingredient evaluation expert panel recently evaluated the safety of aloe and found that aloe latex, but not the polysaccharide substance generated from the inner gel, is cytotoxic [5].

Carcinogenicity

Aloe vera's latex has been linked to antimutagenic and tumor-promoting properties. Nevertheless, anthraquinones in Aloe vera do not seem to be effectively absorbed, and four in vivo investigations found no genotoxicity from aloe-emodin and emodin. Many in vitro research have shown the possible genotoxicity of anthraquinones. Aloe-emodin and other anthranoid-containing laxatives have been linked to colorectal cancer, however current studies have shown no connection. Whole-leaf Aloe powder was shown to be non-carcinogenic at tolerable dosage levels in the colon in a 2-year rat carcinogenicity investigation. Long-term laxative misuse has not been linked to colorectal cancer in several significant epidemiological studies in people.

Photoxicity

Aloe-emodin has been shown to be phototoxic in experiments on animals, although phototoxicity was not shown in a number of clinical trials on people using concentrations of aloe-emodin that are typically present in commercially available Aloe vera preparations. 3.8.4 Negative Consequences After the administration of aloe vera, no severe adverse events were observed in the clinical studies that were analyzed. After applying an Aloe vera preparation topically, three individuals had adverse responses. The most often mentioned negative effects of aloe vera usage in case reports include hypersensitivity and allergic reactions. Aloe vera gel has been known to produce contact dermatitis when used topically, and taking it orally may result in nausea or vomiting. Anthraquinone contaminants in the gel product seem to be responsible for many of these reactions [6].

Drug Interactions and Contraindications Allergy

A known allergy to plants in the Liliaceae family should prevent a person from using aloe vera products. Usage of aloe vera as a laxative when pregnant has the potential to be teratogenic and toxicological for the developing embryo and fetus. Chronic usage of Aloe vera latex has been linked to watery diarrhea and electrolyte imbalance, which may result in renal or cardiac illness. Moreover, anecdotal studies show that the rising potassium loss may cause hypokalemia. As a result, people with a history of renal or cardiac diseases should not use aloe vera latex. Medication interactions: Aloe vera and medications that might change electrolyte balance, including corticosteroids and thiazide diuretics, may interact. A possible herb-drug interaction with cardiac glycosides is suggested by a possible arrhythmia linked to hypokalemia. Those who are taking hypoglycemic medications should exercise caution since there have been some documented interactions with aloe vera gel. A -year-old lady who had surgery and lost 5 L of blood may have experienced a herb-drug interaction between sevoflurane, an inhibitor of thromboxane A2, and aloe vera [7].

Bioavailability of Medicine/Vitamin

In a double-blind, randomized, controlled experiment, it was discovered that the bioavailability of vitamins C and E was improved by aloe vera gel. According to the scientists, aloe vera gel may prevent vitamin oxidation in the gastrointestinal system and its polysaccharides may bind to vitamins to slow down absorption. In a cell model, it has been shown that aloe vera gel considerably increases the transport of insulin. Moreover, there is some limited evidence that shows that coadministering aloe vera gel may improve the intestinal absorption of other medications that are poorly absorbed [8], [9].

The analysis of aloe vera's potential effectiveness in treating certain conditions is made more difficult by variations in aloe vera preparations, their delivery methods, and the animal model or research design used in various investigations. Research on standardized methodological quality is, therefore, essential to establish whether Aloe vera components, separately or in combination, display therapeutic characteristics and the specific processes by which they function. Furthermore necessary are controlled in vivo toxicity and safety investigations on aloe vera formulations in people [10]–[12].

CONCLUSION

Despite a lengthy history of usage, Aloe vera's various medicinal benefits continue to be unsupported by reliable scientific research. The best evidence of effectiveness is for the laxative properties of Aloe vera latex; nevertheless, it has not yet been shown if the latex is more effective than traditional laxative therapies, and the anthraquinones in the latex are linked to significant hazards. Aloe vera gel is generally effective at healing burn wounds when applied topically, but promising early research suggests that oral use of the gel may also be helpful for treating mild to moderate ulcerative colitis, stabilizing metastatic cancer, and lowering blood glucose levels in type 2 diabetes. More study in people is necessary to validate these effects.

REFERENCES:

[1] K. Lestari, “The Effect Of Aloe Vera Decoction On Blood Cholesterol Levels Of Obese Respondents Level I,” *JPK J. Prot. Kesehat.*, 2020, doi: 10.36929/jpk.v9i1.245.

[2] D. Hekmatpou, F. Mehrabi, K. Rahzani, and A. Aminiyan, “The effect of aloe vera clinical trials on prevention and healing of skin wound: A systematic review,” *Iranian Journal of Medical Sciences*. 2019.

[3] N. Suksomboon, N. Poolsup, and S. Punthanitisarn, “Effect of Aloe vera on glycaemic control in prediabetes and type 2 diabetes: A systematic review and meta-analysis,” *Journal of Clinical Pharmacy and Therapeutics*. 2016. doi: 10.1111/jcpt.12382.

[4] L. Langmead, R. J. Makins, and D. S. Rampton, “Anti-inflammatory effects of aloe vera gel in human colorectal mucosa in vitro,” *Aliment. Pharmacol. Ther.*, 2004, doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2004.01874.x.

[5] D. Hekmatpou, F. Mehrabi, K. Rahzani, and A. Aminiyan, “The effect of Aloe Vera gel on prevention of pressure ulcers in patients hospitalized in the orthopedic wards: A randomized triple-blind clinical trial 11 Medical and Health Sciences 1103 Clinical Sciences,” *BMC Complement. Altern. Med.*, 2018, doi: 10.1186/s12906-018-2326-2.

[6] N. Klaikeaw, J. Wongphoom, D. Werawatganon, M. Chayanupatkul, and P. Siriviriyakul, “Anti-inflammatory and anti-oxidant effects of aloe vera in rats with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis,” *World J. Hepatol.*, 2020, doi: 10.4254/wjh.v12.i7.363.

[7] N. Hassanshahi, S. J. Masoumi, D. Mehrabani, S. S. Hashemi, and M. Zare, “The healing effect of aloe vera gel on acetic acid-induced ulcerative colitis in rat,” *Middle East J. Dig. Dis.*, 2020, doi: 10.34172/mejdd.2020.177.

[8] A. Farid, A. Tawfik, B. Elsioufy, and G. Safwat, “In vitro and in vivo anti-Cryptosporidium and anti-inflammatory effects of Aloe vera gel in dexamethasone immunosuppressed mice,” *Int. J. Parasitol. Drugs Drug Resist.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.ijpddr.2021.09.002.

[9] Z. Hai, Y. Ren, J. Hu, H. Wang, Q. Qin, and T. Chen, “Evaluation of the Treatment

Effect of Aloe vera Fermentation in Burn Injury Healing Using a Rat Model," *Mediators Inflamm.*, 2019, doi: 10.1155/2019/2020858.

[10] L. V. Tumay, S. Kılıcturgay, V. Savci, O. Saraydaroglu, and R. Anarat, "Effects of Aloe Vera on healing of colonic anastomoses: experimental rat study," *J. Coloproctology*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.jcol.2018.10.010.

[11] S. S and P. S, "Effects of aloe vera on constipation," *Int. J. Curr. Adv. Res.*, 2017, doi: 10.24327/ijcar.2017.3302.0255.

[12] S. Rullyansyah, F. Azizah, and B. Kunsah, "Effect of Aloe vera extract for reducing formaldehyde level in tuna fish for halal and thoyyib food," *J. Halal Prod. Res.*, 2020, doi: 10.20473/jhpr.vol.3-issue.1.20-24.

CHAPTER 11

HEALTH-RELATED QUALITY OF LIFE IS IMPROVED BY THE HERBAL MEDICATION CORDYCEPS SINENSIS

Asha.K, Assistant Professor
Department of Life Science, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- k.asha@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

This product brings in several million dollars annually. The fungal strains that were isolated from natural Cephalosporium sinensis, including Synnematum sinensis, Gliocladium roseum, Cephalosporium sinensis, and Mortierella hepialid, have also undergone extensive fermentation and are employed in commercial goods. As a result, much research has been done to assess the quality, pharmacological properties, and therapeutic efficacies of wild and cultivated cordyceps. This chapter focuses on the bioactivities, modes of action, and active components of both naturally occurring and cultivated cordyceps.

KEYWORDS:

Herbal Medicine, Cordyceps, Fungus, Human Health.

INTRODUCTION

The term "cordyceps" refers to a fungus genus that develops on insect larva. Based on fungal and/or insect hosts, more than 0 Cordyceps-related species have been discovered to far. Nevertheless, only Cordyceps sinensis has been formally recognized as a herbal medication in Chinese pharmacopoeia. One of the most well-known traditional Chinese remedies and medicinal mushrooms is C. sinensis, often known as Dongchongxiacao. Several types of insect larva are attacked by the fungus, which changes each one into a sclerotium from which the fruiting body develops. Chinese medicine holds that C. sinensis, which has a pleasant flavor and is neutral in character, may refill the kidney, calm the lung, halt bleeding, and get rid of phlegm. C. sinensis is a fungus that has been used to treat renal dysfunction, renal failure, hyposexuality, asthenia after serious sickness, and weariness. It is mostly found in the Chinese provinces of Qinghai, Tibet, Sichuan, Yunnan, and Gansu, in the soil of the grasslands at altitudes of - m. For more than 0 years, C. sinensis has been utilized as a medicine in China [1].

Overexploration and habitat loss have had a terrible impact on the environment of C. sinensis. Despite the issuance of the Ordinance of Resources Protection on Wild Herbal Medicine, the yield of naturally occurring C. sinensis is continuously declining. According to a study done in June and July the yield of natural C. sinensis has dropped by more than % during the last years. The price skyrocketed to more than 0,0 Renminbi per kilogram, and for the previous ten years, only a little amount was available. Owing to C. sinensis' scarcity and exceptional curative properties, natural alternatives including C. militaris, C. liangshanensis, C. gunnii, and C. cicadicola have been offered for sale in stores. Also, some cultured mycelia of C. sinensis and C. militaris fungi have replaced a number of native species in commercial items, and the State Food and Drug Administration of China has authorized medications and two nutritional supplements connected to culture Cordyceps since.

For instance, clinics all across China have employed JinShuiBao capsule, the company's brand of Cs-4. This product brings in several million dollars annually. The fungal strains obtained

from natural C. sinensis, Synnematum sinensis, Cephalosporium sinensis, Gliocladium roseum, and Mortierella hepialid, have also been subjected to extensive fermentation and are employed in commercial goods. As a result, much research has been done to assess the quality, pharmacological properties, and therapeutic efficacies of wild and cultivated cordyceps. This chapter focuses on the bioactivities, modes of action, and active components of both naturally occurring and cultivated cordyceps.

Activity against Tumors

The second greatest cause of disease-related death worldwide is cancer. Surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy remain the only relevant treatment modalities. Owing of the limits of surgery and radiation and the adverse effects of chemotherapy, there is increased interest in producing anticancer medicines from natural materials. According to studies, cordyceps inhibits tumor growth in a number of tumors through a number of different routes. The anticancer properties of cordyceps have been shown in both natural and cultured forms. Cordyceps inhibited the growth of Ehrlich ascites cancer, meth-A fibrosarcoma, EL-4 lymphoma, B melanoma, Lewis lung carcinoma, and H tumors in mice, according to in vivo studies. The fact that C. sinensis reversed the suppressive impact of Taxol-induced leukopenia in mice suggested that C. sinensis may be utilized in conjunction with other chemotherapy treatments for cancer. Many different types of tumor cells, including Lewis lung carcinoma, B melanoma, lymphocytic, prostate, breast, hepatocellular, colorectal, and HL- cells, were directly destroyed by cordyceps. Cordyceps did not exhibit any cytotoxicity against normal cells, while having an impact on tumor cells. Direct cytotoxicity, immunopotentiation, apoptosis, selective suppression of ribonucleic acid, protein synthesis, antioxidant, antiangiogenic, antimutagenic, antimetastatic, and antiviral activity are a few of the methods through which cordyceps exerts its anticancer effects. The apoptotic homeostasis controlled by cordyceps may be the most significant of these mechanisms. Activation of Bax, caspase-3 and/or -9, -8, suppression of cyclooxygenase-2, nuclear factor-B protein production, and downregulation of Bcl-2 level are all components of cordyceps' apoptotic molecular process. In addition, the apoptosis that C. militaris aqueous extract caused in MDA-MB-1 human breast cancer cells was linked to a reduction in the permeability of the mitochondrial membrane. Apoptosis that was induced by the PI3K/Akt pathway and reduced Akt activity were both reversed by the extract. Moreover, the extract-induced apoptotic events were likewise mediated by decreased telomerase activity [2].

Implementing Effect

Humans are shielded against infection by the immune system's several, more targeted defenses. The first barrier that stops infections from entering the body is physical. When a pathogen overcomes these defenses, the innate immune system responds quickly but unspecifically. The adaptive immune system is the third line of defense for the human body. The innate immune system's reaction triggers the adaptive immunological response. Phagocytes, mast cells, eosinophils, basophils, and natural killer cells are among the members of the innate system. B cells have a role in the humoral immune response in the adaptive system, while T cells support the cellular immunological response. Immunopotentiating medications are used to strengthen the immune system and lower the risk of recurrent, fatal infections. Immunosuppressive medications are used to avoid transplant rejection following an organ transplant as well as to regulate autoimmune diseases and inflammation when severe tissue damage develops. According to mounting evidence, cordyceps is a bidirectional regulator of immune function that controls innate and adaptive immunity to have both potentiating and suppressive effects on the immune system.

Potentiating Behavior

Cancer and respiratory infections have traditionally been treated with natural C. sinensis. It has been proposed that immunological activation, in particular the encouragement of innate immunity, is the causal mechanism. When CBL/6 mice were implanted subcutaneously with syngeneic EL-4 lymphoma cells while they were at rest or being treated with cyclophosphamide, the oral administration of C. sinensis extract enhanced macrophage phagocytosis. Interleukin-1, IL-6, IL-, and tumor necrosis factor - were all produced in higher amounts when C. sinensis was cultured. Human peripheral blood mononuclear cell phagocytosis was also increased, as was macrophage phagocytosis and monocyte H2O2 generation. Yet, it did not cause mice to overproduce cytokines.

Subsequent research revealed that an aqueous extract of C. sinensis mycelia increased the production of IL-6, TNF-, and nitric oxide from primary murine macrophages via activating inflammatory-stimulating mitogen-activated protein kinase pathways. Also, the extract worked in concert with interferon-gamma to activate macrophages' production of cytokines, and animals treated with the extract had lower bacterial loads in their spleens than controls receiving a vehicle. The findings show that C. sinensis mycelia activated macrophages to protect the mice against bacterial growth. Moreover, C. sinensis may increase the activity of natural killer cells. Dendritic cells' phenotypic and functional maturation was enhanced by a C. militaris water extract, which in turn triggered T-cell responses against malignancies and microbial infections.

The adaptive immune system, including cellular and humoral immunity, is also supported by cordyceps. Although natural and cultured C. sinensis methanol extracts had no effect on the proliferation of splenocytes and cytokine liberation such as IL-2 in primary mouse splenocytes in vitro or in BALB/c mice in vivo, the extracts enhanced concanavalin A-stimulated proliferation and IL-2 level of mouse splenocytes in vitro at 0 μg/mL or ovalbumin-induced splenocyte proliferation and serum immunoglobulin G, IgG1, and IgG2b levels in ovalbumin-immunized mice. Patients with posthepatic cirrhosis who received cultured C. sinensis had higher lymphocyte CD expression, more CD4+ and CD8+ cells, a better CD4+/CD8+ ratio, and lower IgA and IgG levels. Moreover, the cells in the bronchoalveolar lavage fluids were regulated by cordyceps. IFN- and IL- production might be increased by the C. sinensis ethanol extract, which could subsequently limit IL- release from Th2 cells and decrease IgE synthesis from B lymphocytes [3].

DISCUSSION

As they may either be helpful or destructive to living systems, reactive oxygen species, such as molecular oxygen, superoxide anion, H2O2, hydroxyl radical, peroxynitrite, and hypochlorous acid, are widely known to have a dual function in biological systems. Usually, ROS function physiologically in cell signaling as natural by-products of aerobic metabolism. The lipids, proteins, and nucleic acids of cells may be harmed by ROS when there is a significant increase in environmental stress, such as exposure to heat or UV light. Senescence, cancer, atherosclerosis and cardiovascular diseases, inflammatory lung diseases, immunological dysfunction, and neurological disorders are only a few of the illnesses caused by this damage to cell components. More and more data points to cordyceps' antioxidant activity as one of the possible mechanisms behind its antiaging, anticancer, anti-inflammatory, anti-atherosclerotic, and immunomodulatory properties.

In tests for xanthine oxidase, induction of hemolysis, and lipid-peroxidation, the fruiting bodies of C. sinensis were comparable in potency to caterpillars in terms of their antioxidant properties. The results also showed that the chemical makeup of the caterpillar and the fruiting

body was comparable, proving that the worm in cordyceps serves as a growth medium for the fruiting body before finally engulfing the caterpillar entirely with mycelia. In vitro, cordyceps extracts in both ethanol and water demonstrated considerable antioxidant activity. Nevertheless, compared to the ethanol extract, the water extract showed a higher inhibitory impact on superoxide anions and hydroxyl radicals. Additionally, utilizing in vitro tests including the lipid-peroxidation assay, the 1,1-diphenyl-2-picrylhydrazyl assay, and the protein-peroxidation assay, both native C. sinensis and cultured cordyceps demonstrated direct and powerful antioxidant activity. As native C. sinensis is an endangered species, cultured cordyceps may be employed for antioxidant activity to reduce human needs [4].

In healthy animals, cordyceps exhibits hypoglycemic properties. After a carbohydrate challenge in rats, the oral administration of the cordyceps carbohydrate extract "Cs-4" at 2 g/kg/day for days increased insulin sensitivity. The extract also may have had positive effects by maintaining whole-body glucose disposal with a less pronounced increase in insulin secretion. In a different research, normal rats given Cs-4 for days at doses of 0 or 0 mg/kg/day saw substantial drops in fasting blood glucose of % and %, respectively, and a % rise in fasting plasma insulin in the 0-mg/kg group. Moreover, experiments using oral glucose tolerance showed that the extract substantially increased glucose tolerance at 0.5, 1.0, and 2.0 hours after ingesting glucose.

Antiphobia Practices

Physical and mental weariness may be distinguished by the difficulty in starting or maintaining voluntary activity. Both in illness and in health, fatigue is a frequent symptom. Persistent weariness may influence an individual's performance. Furthermore, karoshi might result from long-term weariness accumulation. Due to its adaptogenic qualities and capacity to increase strength and endurance, cordyceps is used in China to speed up recovery from tiredness and to restore health after a variety of illnesses. The swimming time of mice was significantly extended by oral administration of C. sinensis mycelia water extract at 0 mg/kg/day for 7 days or by oral administration of C. militaris fruiting bodies at 0 mg/kg/day for 4 weeks. These treatments resulted in swimming times of about and minutes, respectively. This result has to do with the improvement of immunity. C. sinensis was given to rats for 8 days at a dose of 0 mg/kg/day, inhibiting the rise in total cholesterol and the fall in alkaline phosphatase while also reversing the reduced weight of the liver, adrenal gland, thymus, and thyroid.

When taken, cordyceps reduces physical weariness due to its role in the creation of adenosine triphosphate. In addition to improving hepatic energy metabolism and blood flow in dietary hypoferric anemic mice for 4 weeks, oral administration of cultured C. sinensis extract also markedly increased the ATP/inorganic phosphate ratio in the liver of normal mice for 3 weeks or for 7 days with no steatosis, necrosis, inflammation, or fibrosis in the liver specimens. Myocardial ATP production capability ex vivo was increased by % and % in mice after either natural or cultured cordyceps extract treatment for 3 days. This increase may have been achieved by improved mitochondrial electron transport. Depression is a common condition among people with chronic fatigue syndrome.

A third to half of these individuals show signs of serious depression. Other than hot water extract, a supercritical fluid extract of C [5]. sinensis has strong antidepressant-like action. SCCS reduced immobility durations in the mouse-tail suspension test after 5 days of dosing, but it had no impact on locomotor activity in the mouse open field test. Since SCCS affects the adrenergic and dopaminergic systems instead than the serotonergic system, it was thought to have antidepressant-like effects. Moreover, cordyceps has a potent antioxidant activity that could remove the ROS created in working muscles during exercise and aid in tiredness relief.

Last but not least, C. sinensis caused a more effective usage and consumption of O2, which increased the survival rate of mice in a hypoxic environment. The findings suggest that cordyceps uses oxygen more effectively to maintain vital physiological functions of tissues and increase tolerance to hypoxia-induced acidosis [6]–[8].

Effect of Protection on the Kidney

Chronic renal dysfunction or failure, chronic nephritis, chronic pyelonephritis, and nephritic syndrome have all been treated with C. sinensis. After 3 days of kidney reperfusion and minutes of ischemia in rats, the C. sinensis extract markedly restored renal function by inhibiting apoptosis and reducing inflammation. Caspase-3, an apoptotic gene, was downregulated along with inflammatory genes including MCP-1, TNF-, and iNOS. The outcome suggests that C. sinensis may have therapeutic value in kidney transplants. The inhibiting action of cordyceps on the growth of mesangial cells serves as another strategy for kidney protection. A buildup of mesangial extracellular matrix and the multiplication of mesangial cells with characteristics of smooth muscle cells have been hypothesized to occur before the onset of glomerular sclerosis. At a dosage of 0 mg/mL, both C. sinensis and C. militaris effectively inhibited the proliferation of human mesangial cells induced by low-density lipoprotein.

In addition, C. sinensis might shield the kidney from cyclosporine A-induced chronic nephrotoxicity by reducing interstitial edema and fibrosis, blood urea nitrogen, and bulbular necrosis. Additionally, treatment of a water extract of cordyceps demonstrated a protective effect in rats with acute renal failure produced by gentamicin. Some of the potential processes include inhibition of lysosomal overactivity, reduction of lipoperoxidation in tubular cells, and protection of sodium pump activity. Rats with chronic renal failure also had their cellular immunity strengthened by C. sinensis. Clinical studies have shown some support for the use of cordyceps as a treatment for renoprotection. For instance, Bailing capsule, a product manufactured from C. sinensis mycelia, reduced the frequency of infections in patients following kidney transplant, improved renal and liver function, controlled hypoproteinemia and hyperlipidemia, and increased hemopoietic function. In patients with chronic renal failure, consumption of another cordyceps product Cs-4, named JinShuiBao, also dramatically enhanced renal function, which lowered serum urea and creatinine and raised total blood protein and calcium [9]–[11]

CONCLUSION

A respected traditional Chinese medication is C. sinensis. Due to its scarcity and high price, commercial health food formulations now mostly employ alternative natural cordyceps, cultured mycelia, and cordyceps fruiting bodies as replacements. Studies have shown that cordyceps contains a range of bioactivities, including anticancer, immunomodulatory, antioxidant, promotion of sexual and reproductive function, hypoglycemic, and antifatigue activities, as well as a protective impact on the kidney and liver. Various bioactivities are influenced by various chemicals. In most cases, cordyceps cultivated mycelia are just as potent as those found in natural cordyceps. In the in vivo therapy of animals for up to 3 weeks, cordyceps is fairly safe. Together with C. sinensis in its natural state, fermented cordyceps products may have therapeutic benefits for humans.

REFERENCES:

[1] R. Tadrous, D. O'Rourke, D. Mockler, and J. Broderick, "Health-related quality of life in narcolepsy: A systematic review and meta-analysis," *Journal of Sleep Research*. 2021. doi: 10.1111/jsr.13383.

[2] E. Garrigues *et al.*, "Post-discharge persistent symptoms and health-related quality of life after hospitalization for COVID-19," *Journal of Infection*. 2020. doi: 10.1016/j.jinf.2020.08.029.

[3] A. Amit Aharon, I. Dubovi, and A. Ruban, "Differences in mental health and health-related quality of life between the Israeli and Italian population during a COVID-19 quarantine," *Qual. Life Res.*, 2021, doi: 10.1007/s11136-020-02746-5.

[4] E. Peters, J. Hübner, and A. Katalinic, "Stress, coping strategies and health-related quality of life during the corona pandemic in April 2020 in Germany," *Dtsch. Medizinische Wochenschrift*, 2021, doi: 10.1055/a-1275-3792.

[5] I. Levkovich, S. Shinan-Altman, N. Essar Schvartz, and M. Alperin, "Depression and Health-Related Quality of Life Among Elderly Patients during the COVID-19 Pandemic in Israel: A Cross-sectional Study," *J. Prim. Care Community Heal.*, 2021, doi: 10.1177/2150132721995448.

[6] C. Wu, J. Cheng, J. Zou, L. Duan, and J. E. Campbell, "Health-related quality of life of hospitalized COVID-19 survivors: An initial exploration in Nanning city, China," *Soc. Sci. Med.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.socscimed.2021.113748.

[7] A. Hajek and H. H. König, "Oral health-related quality of life, probable depression and probable anxiety: evidence from a representative survey in Germany," *BMC Oral Health*, 2022, doi: 10.1186/s12903-022-02047-y.

[8] G. Qu *et al.*, "Health-related quality of life of COVID-19 patients after discharge: A multicenter follow-up study," *J. Clin. Nurs.*, 2021, doi: 10.1111/jocn.15733.

[9] T. Bakas *et al.*, "Systematic review of health-related quality of life models," *Health and Quality of Life Outcomes*. 2012. doi: 10.1186/1477-7525-10-134.

[10] K. Y. Chen, T. Li, F. H. Gong, J. S. Zhang, and X. K. Li, "Predictors of Health-Related Quality of Life and Influencing Factors for COVID-19 Patients, a Follow-Up at One Month," *Front. Psychiatry*, 2020, doi: 10.3389/fpsyt.2020.00668.

[11] S. Zhang and W. Xiang, "Income gradient in health-related quality of life - The role of social networking time," *Int. J. Equity Health*, 2019, doi: 10.1186/s12939-019-0942-1.

CHAPTER 12

THE INCREDIBLE AND POWERFUL GINGER

Uzma Noor Shah, Assistant Professor
Department of Life Science, School of Sciences, Jain (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, India
Email Id- ns.uzma@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

During the last several years, there has been a noticeable rise in the usage of alternative or "natural" treatments. Under the premise that these drugs would have a positive impact, an increasing number of older persons are utilizing complementary and alternative medicine, nutritional supplements, and herbal medicines without seeing a doctor. This may not be a safe or wise course of action, however. For instance, a recent study at least suggested that there was a big issue with herb-chemotherapeutic medication interactions in cancer patients, and that at least % of the herbal medicines these patients used lacked scientific data indicating any possible interactions. The material on this website is for informational purposes only and is subject to change without notice.

KEYWORDS:

Bioactive Components, Human Health, Herbal Medicines, Ginger, Rhizomes.

INTRODUCTION

One of the most popular dietary condiments in the world is ginger. The ginger rhizome's oleoresin includes a number of bioactive substances, including -gingerol, the main pungent component thought to have a wide range of notable pharmacological and physiological effects. While ginger is generally regarded as safe, due to the incomplete knowledge of its mechanisms of action, it should be used with care in therapeutic applications. Many reviews have been done on the pharmacological, chemical, and medical benefits of ginger. Studies concentrating on proving ginger's pharmacological and physiological effects have grown in popularity over the last several years, as has interest in ginger or its many components as effective preventative or therapeutic agents. This chapter's main goal is to thoroughly review the current scientific data supporting ginger's shown efficacy in preventing or treating a range of pathologic diseases [1].

Ginger's History and Origin

A family of plants that also comprises cardamom and turmeric includes ginger. The gingerols in particular, which seem to be the principal component of ginger examined in most of the health-related scientific studies, are the primary cause of its pungent scent. The primary part of ginger that is eaten is the rhizome, which is the horizontal stem from which the roots grow. The term "ginger" as we know it today derives from the Medieval English word "gingivere," although the Sanskrit word "srngaveram," which means "horn root," refers to this spice and is nearly years older. It was known as zinziberi in Latin and ziggiberis in Greek. It's a fact that a lot of people aren't aware of, but there is a lot of information out there about it. The ginger plant is currently grown all throughout the humid tropics, with India being the greatest producer. Ginger is said to have been produced by Indians and Chinese for more than years as a tonic root to heal a variety of diseases. Even before history was properly documented, ginger was utilized as a flavour. Almost years ago, it was brought from India to the Roman Empire as a very significant piece of commerce, and it was highly prized for its therapeutic qualities. Even after the collapse of the Roman Empire, ginger remained a highly valued item in Europe. For

ages, Arab traders dominated the trade in ginger and other spices. In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, the value of a pound of ginger was comparable to the cost of a sheep. It was brought in preserved condition to be used in candies by the middle Ages. The gingerbread man was created by Queen Elizabeth I of England and quickly became a beloved holiday dessert.

Utilisation, Prepare, and Process

There are several ways to prepare ginger, including raw, dried, pickled, preserved, candied, crystallized, and ground or powdered. The scent is robust and spicy, with a taste that is a little peppery and a little sweet. The intended use of the ginger rhizome affects when it is picked since the concentration of essential oils rises as ginger matures. Ginger may be harvested at nine months or later if oil extraction is the primary goal. Ginger is often preserved in sweet vinegar, which gives it a pink hue; sushi lovers love this kind of ginger.

When ginger is collected at 8 to 9 months old, the peel is tough and must be removed before eating. The root is also more fragrant at this time and is used dry or powdered into ginger powder. This is the kind that is most often used in curry mixes, biscuits, and cake mixes as well as on spice racks. Ginger is boiled in sugar syrup and then crystallized or candied, then dusted with powdered sugar. The rhizomes of ginger are soft with a mild taste and are best utilized in fresh or preserved forms. Ginger that has been collected at 5 months is not yet mature and has extremely thin skin [2].

Ginger's Bioactive Components

Several analytical techniques have helped to identify at least 5 different components in both fresh and dried ginger variants. Although shogaols, which are the main gingerol dehydration products, are more prevalent in dry ginger than in fresh ginger, gingerols, which are the main components of fresh ginger, are found in somewhat lower amounts in dry ginger. The methanolic crude extracts of fresh ginger rhizome have been used to identify at least chemicals that are related to gingerol.

Ginger has been fractionated into at least bioactive compounds, including -gingerol, -gingerol, -gingerol, -gingerol, -paradol, -shogaol, -shogaol, 1-dehydro--gingerdione, -gingerdione, hexahydrocurcumin, tetrahydrocurcumin, gingerenone A, 1,7-bis—5-methoxyhepthan-3-one, and methoxy--gingerol. Depending on the location of origin, the industrial processor, and whether the ginger is fresh, dried, or processed, a sample of ginger may have varying amounts of each component.

The most prevalent pungent bioactive ingredient in the majority of the examined oleoresin samples seems to be -gingerol, which is one of the bioactive pungent components of Jamaican ginger, along with -, -, and -gingerols and -shogaol. Metabolic profiling revealed some quantitative variations in the contents of -, -, and -gingerols, despite phylogenetic research demonstrating that all ginger samples from wildly different geographic origins are genetically identical. Some unsettling findings were found after looking at the amounts of -, -, and -gingerols and -shogaol in different ginger-root nutritional supplements that were randomly obtained from a range of pharmacies and health food shops. Perhaps not unexpectedly, it was discovered that the concentration of these active ingredients varied greatly, ranging from none to very small levels to several milligrams per gram. In addition, the advised serving size varied from roughly 0 mg to 4.8 g/day. It's unclear what led to the broad range of doses. According to these research, ginger has a wide range of bioactive substances, and content standardization is seriously missing.

Ginger's Metabolism

Despite being one of the most popular spices in the world, nothing is known about the metabolism or metabolites of ginger. To fully comprehend ginger's mode of action and possible therapeutic benefits, its bioactivity must be assessed. Even though many food-derived supplements are eaten today with little information of their effectiveness or safety, these concerns are starting to get greater attention. -Gingerol, a bioactive ingredient in ginger, is perhaps the most researched. After oral administration of -gingerol to rats, careful separation of a number of its metabolites was described. It seems that -gingerol undergoes conjugation and oxidation of its phenolic side chain since a major metabolite, --gingerol-4′-O-glucuronide, was discovered in the bile and many lesser metabolites were found in urine treated with –glucuronidase [3].

Once -glucuronidase was hydrolyzed, the researchers were able to detect a glucuronide of -gingerol, and the intestine glucuronidation was further validated by contrasting plasma samples from the hepatic portal vein and femoral vein. The pharmacokinetics, tissue distribution, and excretion investigations of 6-gingerol following oral or intraperitoneal treatment in rats were also obtained using this approach. In a trial where rats were given an oral ginger extract, -gingerol was quickly absorbed into the plasma, reaching a peak concentration within minutes. The gastrointestinal tract had the highest concentration of -gingerol out of all the tissues it was delivered to. Most tissues attained their peak -gingerol concentrations within approximately minutes, and the tissue concentration was greater than the plasma concentration. The pharmacokinetics of -, -, and -gingerols and -shogaol together with their corresponding conjugate metabolites were the topic of at least one clinical investigation. In this instance, blood samples were collected minutes to hours after a single oral dosage of ginger was administered to human volunteers at doses ranging from 0 mg to 2 g. Results showed that the free forms of -, -, and -gingerols or -shogaol were not detectable, whereas the respective glucuronide of each compound was detected. This suggests that these ginger components are easily absorbed after oral consumption and can be detected as glucuronide conjugates, although more work is undoubtedly needed.

The Scientific Evidence on the Health Effects of Discussion

Since ginger and its metabolites tend to collect in the gastrointestinal system, the consistent findings of ginger exerting many of its actions in this location are not unexpected. From ancient times, ginger has been used to cure hundreds of diseases, from colds to cancer, and is said to have a number of potent medicinal and preventative properties.

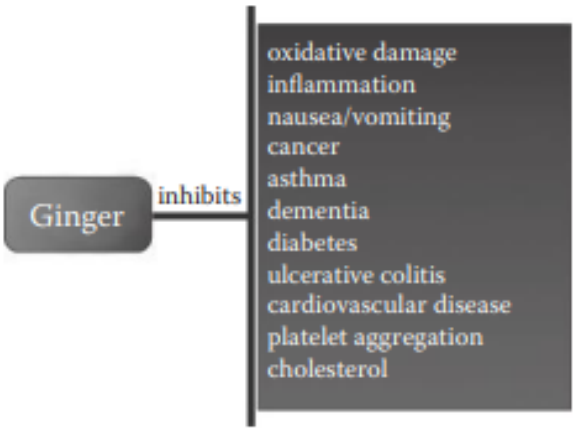

Figure 1: Illustrate the ginger's wide range of defensive properties.

Like to many other therapeutic plants, most of the knowledge has been passed down orally, with few controlled scientific data to back up the various claims. The processes and targets of ginger and its many constituents have, however, been the subject of increasingly structured scientific studies in recent years. Figure 1 illustrates a summary of the data supporting the use of ginger as an antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti-nausea, and anti-cancer agent in addition to its preventive properties against various illness states.

Ginger's General Antioxidant Properties

Many illnesses are linked to oxidative stress, and ginger's antioxidant qualities are a typical mechanism often advanced to explain its activities and health advantages. Ginger was shown to reduce age-related oxidative stress indicators and was proposed as a preventative measure for ethanol-induced hepatotoxicity by decreasing oxidative reactions in ethanol-treated rats. The only foods that provide more total antioxidants than ginger root are pomegranates and certain kinds of berries. By activating the nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate oxidase system, the xanthine oxidase system, or both, the phorbol ester -O-tetradecanoylphorbol--acetate causes oxidative stress. In both Chinese hamster ovary AS cells and human promyelocytic leukemia - cells, ginger has been shown to reduce TPA-induced oxidative stress. Others have shown how ginger chemicals successfully prevent the generation of superoxide. According to a number of studies, ginger inhibits lipid peroxidation and maintains lowered glutathione levels [4].

Ginger's Anti-Inflammatory Properties

Ginger is said to provide a variety of health benefits, including the reduction of pain, inflammation, and edema. It has been observed that -gingerol, a dried ginger extract, and a dry gingerol-enriched extract all have powerful analgesic and anti-inflammatory effects. Previous animal investigations reveal that rat hind limbs perfused with -gingerol demonstrated enhanced heat generation that was related with increased oxygen demand and lactate outflow. Vasoconstriction without the involvement of adrenergic receptors or subsequent catecholamine release was at least partially linked to thermogenesis. Larger concentrations of ginger components, on the other hand, were shown to decrease oxygen intake, which was linked to a disturbance of mitochondrial activity. In a subsequent investigation, rats that received a single intraperitoneal injection of -gingerol had a quick, noticeable reduction in body temperature and a considerable decrease in metabolic rate, supporting the findings from the earlier study.

Studies indicate that transient receptor potential vanilloid subtype 1, a heat- and pain-sensitive receptor that may interact with -gingerol, is a mechanism through which ginger may display anti-inflammatory properties. By promoting both extracellular calcium inflow and thapsigargin-sensitive intracellular calcium release, -gingerol has been shown to significantly increase intracellular calcium levels in Madin-Darby canine kidney renal tubular cells. The -gingerols and -shogaols may enhance the intracellular calcium concentration in TRPV1-expressing HEK3 cells because they are TRPV1 agonists known as gingerols. Most of the chemicals induce unpleasant or nociceptive reactions when applied to the eye or after subcutaneous injection to the hind paw, respectively.

Shogaols seem to be more effective than gingerols. In this instance, the majority of ginger components supported adrenal catecholamine production, which affects how much energy is used. According to several studies, ginger may help treat rheumatism, osteoarthritis, and inflammation. Nonetheless, there is controversy around the efficacy and safety of ginger for treating arthritis due to discrepancies in clinical research. In a research published in the Journal of the American Medical Association, it was shown that the use of a standardized test for determining the presence of a disease was connected with a lower risk of death. Most recently,

in the streptococcal cell wall-induced arthritic animal model of rheumatoid arthritis, the efficiency of a crude ginger extract was compared with a fraction containing solely gingerols and derivatives to reduce joint swelling. The findings showed that although both extracts could stop joint inflammation, the crude dichloromethane extract was superior at stopping both joint inflammation and destruction since it also included essential oils and more polar chemicals [5].

Ginger as a Motion Sickness Remedy

The most typical and well-known use of ginger throughout history has probably been to treat nausea and vomiting. The advantages and risks of using herbs to treat liver and gastrointestinal discomfort have been examined, and multiple controlled trials have shown that ginger works well as an antiemetic in general. Ginger's ability to break up and evacuate intestinal gas via its carminative impact has been linked to its usefulness as an antiemetic. The outcomes of a randomized, double-blind research conducted on healthy volunteers who indicated that ginger significantly sped up stomach emptying and induced antral contractions validated this theory. In the past, -gingesulfonic acid, obtained from ginger root, was shown to be beneficial against rat stomach ulcers caused by HCl/ethanol. Compared to -gingerol or -shogaol, this molecule had less pungency but stronger antiulcer efficacy. Ginger root is often suggested for treating seasickness and is reported to be superior to dimenhydrinate or placebo against symptoms of motion sickness. One gram of ginger may be helpful in lowering the subjective intensity of seasickness among navy cadets traveling on rough seas, according to a follow-up research. Nevertheless, further trials found no advantages of ginger for treating motion sickness, and at least one study found that patients getting ginger extract for osteoarthritis suffered more, although moderate, gastrointestinal side effects than a group receiving a placebo. While some data shows that ginger inhibits serotonin receptors and exerts its antiemetic effects directly on the gastrointestinal system and the central nervous system, the precise antiemetic mechanism of ginger is unknown.

Ginger's Anticancer Properties

The potential cancer therapeutic uses of ginger and its different components are now the subject of intense attention from several research organizations, including our own. Previous reviews have covered a variety of elements of the chemopreventive effects of several dietary and pharmaceutical phytochemicals, including ginger. Numerous forms of ginger, including a crude or imperfectly purified extract, gingerols, particularly -gingerol, shogaols, particularly -shogaol, and zerumbone, a sesquiterpene compound derived from ginger as well as a number of minor components and metabolites, were the focus of studies on their anticancer properties. Many cancer forms, including lymphoma, hepatoma, colorectal cancer, breast cancer, skin cancer, liver cancer, and bladder cancer, have been studied in order to determine if ginger is useful in preventing or reducing cancer growth. Antioxidant properties, the potential to induce apoptosis, reduce proliferation, cause cell-cycle arrest, and the suppression of activator protein 1 and NF-B/COX-2 signaling pathways are among the reasons put up to explain ginger's anticancer properties and those of its constituent parts [6].

Prevention of cardiovascular and Other Diseases

Result of Ginger In addition to its benefits on cancer, recent research suggests that ginger may also have preventative effects on cardiovascular health and a variety of other chronic problems. A review of the in vitro and animal studies demonstrating ginger's anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, antiplatelet, hypotensive, and hypolipidemic properties has shown that it has the potential to treat several aspects of cardiovascular disease. Human experiments are less compelling, however, and additional research is required. Due to an apparent correlation between ginger and documented cases of increased risk of bleeding after surgery or if taken

with anticoagulant medications like warfarin, caution has been advised while using ginger and other herbal extracts. The information is not, however, conclusive. At least one research suggests that ginger has no impact on blood pressure, heart rate, or coagulation markers and does not interact with anticoagulant medicines such as warfarin. A further investigation that found ginger had no impact on the coagulation status, pharmacokinetics, or pharmacodynamics of warfarin in healthy patients validated these results.

Several animal models have shown that an aqueous ginger extract may reduce arterial blood pressure in a dose-dependent manner. According to at least one study, giving or eating standardized ginger extract to mice reduced the size of their aortic atherosclerotic lesions, their plasma triglycerides and cholesterol, their related lipid peroxides, and their LDL aggregation. Ginger extract treatment had a notable antihyperlipidemic impact and reduced the severity of atherosclerosis in rabbits given a high-cholesterol diet compared to the group that received just cholesterol. Moreover, a double-blind, controlled clinical trial investigation found that ginger powder dramatically reduced cholesterol levels in volunteer patients. In comparison to the placebo group, triglyceride, cholesterol, and LDL levels were significantly reduced. Significantly, the ginger group's high-density lipoprotein level was greater than the placebo group's, while the placebo group's very-low-density lipoprotein level was higher than the ginger group's. Ginger had this impact through reducing lipid peroxidation and increasing fibrinolytic activity, while blood lipid levels were the same as in control mice. Ginger meal dramatically reduced blood cholesterol levels. Another chemical derived from ginger, -8,-epoxylabd--ene-,-dial, was discovered to prevent cholesterol production. Also, it has been shown that ginger marginally lowers the levels of retinoid-binding protein mRNA expression in the visceral fat and liver of male rats that were given cholesterol to produce hyperlipidemia [7], [8].

Ginger has been used for millennia to treat respiratory conditions. Asthma is a chronic disease marked by inflammation and reactivity of airway smooth muscle cells to various chemicals that cause spasms. According to reports, ginger rhizomes' constituents include strong chemicals that may decrease allergic responses and may be helpful in the treatment and prevention of allergic illnesses. Ginger extract, according to Ghayur, Gilani, and Janssen, suppresses airway contraction and related calcium signaling. This effect may be caused by inhibiting plasma membrane calcium channels. An intraperitoneal injection of a ginger extract mostly made of gingerols significantly reduced the migration of eosinophils to the lungs in mice exposed to ovalbumin and repressed the Th2 cell-driven response to allergen in a mouse model of Th2-mediated pulmonary inflammation. It has been hypothesized that ginger contains anti-diabetic properties. Ginger may help regulate blood sugar levels since it improved glucose tolerance and raised serum insulin levels in the streptozotocin-induced diabetic rat model in comparison to untreated rats. Treatment with a ginger extract resulted in a substantial decrease in the insulin resistance-related hyperinsulinemia, hyperglycemia, and weight gain caused by fructose. By administering an aqueous extract of raw ginger to streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats, the researchers were able to reduce blood sugar, cholesterol, and triacylglycerol levels as well as the levels of urine proteins, water intake, and urine output. They also stopped the weight loss that is common with diabetes [9]–[11].

CONCLUSION

Ginger has been used for thousands of years as a medical herb to cure a wide range of illnesses in addition to being a very popular dietary condiment for food flavoring. Chemical and metabolic investigations have shown that ginger includes hundreds of chemicals and metabolites. The bioactive compounds gingerols and shogaols, particularly -gingerol and -shogaol, have been investigated the most. Each component's composition is obviously

influenced by the ginger rhizome's treatment and source. During the last several years, there has been a noticeable rise in the amount of research being done to understand how natural substances might prevent illness. Despite the sheer volume of research investigations, many of the conclusions are phenomenon-based and provide descriptive and observational information rather than mechanistic evidence.

On the kinetics of ginger and its components as well as the consequences of long-term use, further research in both animals and people is required. It is necessary to identify certain molecular targets and methods of action. There are obviously many different substances that make up ginger, many of which have not been well researched. It is alarming that ginger supplements are not standardized, and it is unclear if consuming large amounts of separate components is a good idea. To exert their beneficial benefits, -gingerol or other ginger components may need to interact with or rely on other ingredients in the whole food supply. Study findings substantiate the numerous reports of ginger's potency as an antinausea agent and as a potential colon cancer preventive substance by showing that ginger and its contents accumulate in the gastrointestinal system. In vitro and ex vivo studies have shown ginger to be an effective antioxidant, however there aren't any clear in vivo data and few known targets or processes. Ginger is thought to have anti-inflammatory properties through inhibiting COX-2, which thus prevents the creation of prostaglandins and leukotrienes.

On the other hand, there is significant disagreement in the evidence for ginger's ability to reduce arthritis-related pain and swelling. Ginger is most often used to treat nausea and vomiting brought on by pregnancy, chemotherapy, and certain forms of surgery. The clinical evidence unquestionably shows that ginger is at least as good as vitamin B6 in treating these symptoms, and may even be superior. Again, mechanisms are missing, but there are no reports that ginger has any negative side effects or may make patients' or pregnant women's illnesses worse. In recent years, there has been a noticeable surge in interest in ginger as a potential anticancer drug, and colon cancer has been linked to a specific protein target. Moreover, ginger seems to lower cholesterol and enhance lipid metabolism, lowering the risk of diabetes and cardiovascular disease. In conclusion, ginger has been claimed to have a variety of pharmacological characteristics, while its precise biological targets are still mostly understood. Nonetheless, usage of ginger seems to be safe, and its benefits are strong and astonishing in its numerous uses, despite the absence of detailed mechanistic knowledge.

REFERENCES:

[1] D. Tiran, “Ginger to reduce nausea and vomiting during pregnancy: Evidence of effectiveness is not the same as proof of safety,” *Complement. Ther. Clin. Pract.*, 2012, doi: 10.1016/j.ctcp.2011.08.007.

[2] S. P. Cheng *et al.*, “Haplotype-resolved genome assembly and allele-specific gene expression in cultivated ginger,” *Hortic. Res.*, 2021, doi: 10.1038/s41438-021-00599-8.

[3] M. Taha, M. M. Ibrahim, M. Eldesoqui, M. A. M. Iesa, T. A. S. Baokbah, and H. M. A. Sonpol, “Ameliorating effect of combined cinnamon and ginger oils against the neurotoxicity of nicotine administration on the prefrontal cortex of adult albino rats: Immunohistochemical and ultrastructural study,” *Sci. Pharm.*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/scipharm89030041.

[4] J. B. Zadeh and N. M. Kor, “Physiological and pharmaceutical effects of Ginger (Zingiber officinale Roscoe) as a valuable medicinal plant,” *Eur. J. Exp. Biol.*, 2014.

[5] M. Mounier, S. Shehata, and T. Soliman, “Anticancer activity of nanoencapsulated

ginger in whey proteins against human tumor cell lines," *Egypt. Pharm. J.*, 2020, doi: 10.4103/epj.epj_30_19.

[6] P. Shirooye, R. Mokaberinejad, L. Ara, and M. Hamzeloo-Moghadam, "Volatile constituents of ginger oil prepared according to Iranian traditional medicine and conventional method: A comparative study," *African J. Tradit. Complement. Altern. Med.*, 2016, doi: 10.21010/ajtcam.v13i6.11.

[7] O. I. Aruoma, J. P. E. Spencer, D. Warren, P. Jenner, J. Butler, and B. Halliwell, "Characterization of food antioxidants, illustrated using commercial garlic and ginger preparations," *Food Chem.*, 1997, doi: 10.1016/S0308-8146(95)00254-5.

[8] S. A. Z. Naqvi *et al.*, "Determination of antimicrobial and antioxidant potential of agro-waste peels," *An. Acad. Bras. Cienc.*, 2020, doi: 10.1590/0001-3765202020181103.

[9] M. Gupta and D. K. Pandey, "Biotechnological Aspects and Genetic Diversity Assessment in Zingiber Species," *Int. J. Plant Soil Sci.*, 2022, doi: 10.9734/ijpss/2022/v34i1130937.

[10] A. Shadap, Y. A. Lyngdoh, and S. K. Singh, "Ginger as an alternative medicine to urban population - A review," *J. Pure Appl. Microbiol.*, 2018, doi: 10.22207/JPAM.12.2.67.

[11] M. Modi and K. Modi, *Ginger Root*. 2021.

CHAPTER 13

THE BIOLOGICAL ACTIVITY OF GINSENG AND ITS RELATION TO HUMAN HEALTH

Pande Milind Sharad, Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- milind.pande27@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

It is often praised for having anti-inflammatory and antioxidant properties. Moreover, it could lower blood sugar and be advantageous for certain cancers. Moreover, ginseng may ease the signs of erectile dysfunction, boost cognitive function, lessen weariness, and bolster the immune system. The antioxidative and anticancer properties of ginseng have been explored in both fundamental and clinical studies over the last several decades, along with its benefits on enhancing immunity, energy, and sexuality and preventing cardiovascular illnesses, diabetes mellitus, and neurological disorders. Ginseng could be a useful source for the creation of new drugs, although more proof is still needed. Additionally, ginseng may have pharmacological interactions despite the existing research shows it is a generally safe substance. This paper examines the Panax genus of plant's bioactive chemicals, worldwide distribution, and medicinal potential.

KEYWORDS:

Biological Activity, Ginseng, Herbal Medications, Human Health.

INTRODUCTION

Ginseng is a medicinal plant that is often used to cure a variety of ailments. Ginseng has been used for improving immunological function, proper functioning of the central nervous system, reducing stress, and for its antioxidant properties. Its pharmacological effects have been shown to be effective in treating cancer, diabetes, and cardiovascular illnesses. For more than years, East Asian nations such as China, Korea, and Japan have used the root of Panax ginseng C. A. Meyer, often known as Korean or Asian ginseng, as a useful and significant folk remedy. The term "panax," which denotes a remedy for all ailments and a source of longevity as well as physical power and resilience, is derived from the Greek word "panacea". Sales of P. ginseng are rising in North America and Europe as well as other regions of the globe as the use of traditional Chinese herbs for medical and nutritional reasons grows more widespread in Western nations. The ginsenosides, a class of saponins having a dammarane triterpenoid structure, are the primary bioactive elements of P. ginseng. About ginsenosides have been isolated from P. ginseng root, and new structures are constantly being discovered, notably in the berries of Panax quinquefolius and Panax japonica. The structural and pharmacological characteristics of ginseng as well as its active ingredients, such as ginsenosides, polysaccharides, and polyacetylenic alcohols, are reviewed in this chapter. The repercussions of the repercussions of the repercussions of the repercussions of the repercussions of the repercussions of the repercussions of the repercussions of the repercussions of the repercussions are explored [1].

Ginseng's Structural Properties

The primary components of ginseng are ginsenosides, sometimes referred to as ginseng saponins, and they are divided into two main categories according to the nature of their

aglycones, protopanaxadiol and protopanaxatriol. Dammarane triterpenoidal skeletons in PPD and PPT contain sugar moieties that bind at the C-3, C-6, and C- locations. Dammar-ene-3-triol and dammar--ene3,6,,-tetrol, respectively, are the actual structures of PPD and PPT ginseng sapogenins. Ginsenosides, also known as ginsenoside Rx, vary from one another in terms of their place of attachment, kind of aglycone, quantity of sugar moieties, and sugar moieties. Ginsenoside Ro is an unusual example of an oleanane-type saponin, which is widespread in plants. Polyacetylene ginsenoside Ro is another ginsenoside of the oleanane type and has a polyacetylenyl ester at the C-6′ position of the glucosyl moiety. After ginseng root extraction with aqueous alcohol to produce n-butanol extract as a saponin fraction, these ginsenosides are typically removed using water/n-butanol partitioning. The many pharmacological effects of ginseng on cancer, diabetes, inflammation, stress, the immunological system, the cardiovascular system, and the central nervous system may be influenced by the structural variety of ginsenosides. Intriguingly, the coexistence of PPD- and PPT-type ginsenosides in ginseng may be related to its capacity to both excite and relax the central nervous system. Whereas ginsenoside Rg1 had stimulant activity, ginsenoside Rb1 was shown to have depressive effects on the central nervous system. Food intake reduced when Rb1 was microinjected into the hypothalamic ventromedial nucleus, suggesting CNS-suppressive effect. Although a rise in ambient temperature caused anorexia, increased water consumption, and reduced ambulation, the prolonged central dose of ginsenoside Rg1 mitigated these effects [2].

Ginseng's Additional Ingredients

Essential oils, antioxidants, polyacetylenic alcohols, peptides, amino acids, polysaccharides, and vitamins are among the beneficial nonsaponin components found in ginseng. Since plant polysaccharides often exhibit anticancer effects through modulating innate immunity, ginseng polysaccharides have also been the focus of chemical and biological investigation. Ginsenan S-IA and Ginsenan S-IIA are two acidic polysaccharides that were isolated from P. ginseng. There is evidence that ginsenan S-IIA promotes phagocytosis. Crude polysaccharide fractions, which are typically made by ethanol precipitation after the extraction of ginseng root with hot water, have been used in several immunological research. In Section 8.3, their immunological actions are detailed. It has become much easier to comprehend the chemistry of ginsenosides in both their intact and altered or metabolized forms, which has helped researchers better grasp the pharmacological effects of ginseng. Nevertheless, more research has to be done on nonsaponin components, including immunomodulating polysaccharides, as well as the interaction and/or harmonization of those components.

Ginseng's Immunomodulatory Action

As the chemical make-up of the purified fractions of ginseng used in research differs, there have been various publications documenting the immunomodulating effects of ginseng, but the findings are somewhat disputed and contradictory. We discuss the immunomodulating properties of aqueous extracts, saponin fractions, and polysaccharide fractions of ginseng in Ginseng Aqueous Extracts' Immunomodulating Actions Aqueous ginseng extracts include different water-soluble low- and high-molecular weight components, minerals, amino acids, and saponins. According to a study, ginseng extract controlled the cytokine generation in a mouse model with lung infection caused by Pseudomonas aeruginosa. A greater ratio of IFN-/IL-4 was created by the lung cells from the ginseng extract-treated group, which also produced more interferon and tumor necrosis factor. The mice with Panax aeruginosa lung infection responded to ginseng extract therapy with a Th1-like immune response, according to the results. Long-term oral treatment of the ginseng extract seems to stimulate humoral immune response but decreases spleen cell activities in male BALB/c mice. Ovalbumin and ginseng

extract-treated mice had eight times the amount of anti-OVA immunoglobulin G in their blood, although spleen cell synthesis of IgG was unaffected. Compared to immunizing with PR8 alone, intranasal coadministration with inactivated influenza virus A and ginseng extract raised the levels of influenza virus-specific antibodies and neutralizing activity and offered protective immunity.

DISCUSSION

Ginseng's Anticarcinogenetic Action

Chemotherapy, radiation, and early tumor diagnosis and surgical resection have been the primary tools in the fight against cancer. Moreover, efforts are made to create gene therapy. The outcomes, however, have not been stellar, and the focus is now shifting from therapeutic techniques to cancer prevention by discovering potent natural compounds as chemopreventive agents. Ginseng is one of the most promising cancer prevention possibilities. Stomach, lung, liver, pancreatic, ovaries, colon, and oral cavity malignancies are less common in those who ingest ginseng preparations. Panax japonicus, Panax ginseng, Panax quinquefolius, and other closely related plants are extensively used for therapeutic reasons. Rg3 and Rh2 are identified as main active anticancer saponins despite the presence of a diverse variety of chemicals in these plants. Ginsenosides are primarily responsible for the pharmacological actions of these ginsengs. The anticarcinogenic effects of ginseng are based on a variety of mechanisms, including cell cytotoxicity and differentiation, antitumor promotion associated with inflammation, antimetastasis and inhibition of angiogenesis, synergistic effect on chemical therapeutic agents, and lowering multidrug resistance [3].

Impact on the Cytotoxicity and Differentiation of Tumor Cells

There have been reports of saponin and nonsaponin chemicals having lethal effects on numerous cancer cell lines in vitro. Ginsenoside Rh2, a distinctive KRG component, polyacetylenes, panaxydol, panaxynol, and panaxytriol are the main active ingredients. Ginsenoside Rh2 was shown by Jia et al. to reduce proliferation, induce apoptosis in cancer cell lines, and make drug-resistant breast cancer cells more responsive to paclitaxel. Recently, it was shown that human leukemia cells treated with KRG extract underwent apoptosis and had lower telomerase activity. Rg1, Rg3, Rh2, and Rk1 are four typical ginsenosides that operate as KRG's primary active components. Ginsenosides Rg3 and Rh2 modulated mitogen-activated protein kinases and detached cells to prevent the growth of prostate cancer cells. Ginsenoside Rh2 treatment dramatically decreased the survival of MCF-7 and MDA-MB-1 breast cancer cells with G0/G1 phase cell-cycle arrest, which was mediated by pInk4B and pKip1-dependent suppression of cyclin-dependent kinases.

Rh2 also significantly reduced -fetoprotein secretion and -glutamyl transpeptidase activity in [4], [5] SMMC- hepatocarcinoma while significantly increasing albumin secretion and alkaline phosphatase activity. Moreover, Rh2 simultaneously induced cell differentiation while nearly entirely inhibiting telomerase activity. The concentration of Rg3 was observed to significantly rise after steam or heat treatment of American ginseng and notoginseng, along with an improvement in the antiproliferation of colorectal cancer cells. Also, two substances derived from Korean ginseng root, acetylpanaxydol and panaxydolchlorohydrin, shown cytotoxicity against lymphoid leukemia L. By boosting the expression of p and pRb and decreasing that of inhibitor of differentiation 1 and 2, panaxydol, a polyacetylene chemical derived from Panax notoginseng, and P. ginseng suppressed proliferation and encouraged differentiation of the human hepatocarcinoma cell line HepG2. According to these investigations, ginseng components such ginsenoside Rh2 and panaxydol inhibit the growth of cancer cells and promote the differentiation of healthy cells into more developed types [6]–[8].

Chemicals with Anticarcinogenic Activity and a Synergistic Impact

Therapeutic Substances

The inhibitory impact of ginseng on the carcinogenesis brought on by several chemical carcinogens has been the subject of many investigations. According to earlier research, long-term oral treatment of KRG extract prevented the development and spread of tumors brought on by aflatoxin B1, urethane, and 7,-DMBA. Ginseng's ability to prevent cancer was assessed using DMBA-induced skin carcinogenesis. In the beginning of tumorigenesis, there was a noticeable decrease in cumulative tumor frequency as well as tumor incidence. Lung cancer incidence was statistically significantly reduced by ginsenosides Rg3 and Rg5, and Rh2 tended to lower incidence. According to research by Panwar et al., P. ginseng extract reduced the frequency of chromosomal abnormalities and micronuclei while inhibiting lung adenoma brought on by benzopyrene. Another research found that downregulating cyclin proteins and kinases caused Rh2 to have an antiproliferative impact on human lung adenocarcinoma A9 cells, resulting in G1 arrest and subsequent death mediated by caspase-8. Dietary therapy of KRG inhibited cell proliferation, acting on abnormal crypt foci in the colon mucosa, and decreased colon carcinogenesis caused by 1, 2-dimethylhydrazine. Moreover, KRG was shown to have both preventative and therapeutic effects against liver cancer in rats that was brought on by diethylnitrosamine [9]–[11].

Regulation of Glucose Transport and Blood Glucose Levels

In both human and animal investigations, there are several instances of ginseng root alleviating diabetes symptoms. In experiments on animals, ginseng root taken orally was able to prevent insulin resistance and reverse the effects of high fructose-induced insulin resistance in rats after 4 weeks. In a high fat-induced hyperglycemia mouse model, ethanol extract of wild ginseng root reduced weight growth and raised fasting blood glucose, triglycerides, and high free fatty acid levels. Ginsenoside Re reduced oxidative stress in the kidney and eye of diabetic rats as well as blood glucose, cholesterol, and triglyceride levels. Ginseng may help patients with type 2 diabetes maintain better glycemic control and prevent the onset of diabetes in healthy individuals. American ginseng is said to reduce blood sugar levels in diabetic people, according to clinical trials. In these investigations, both type 2 diabetes patients and nondiabetic participants were found to benefit from ingestion of American ginseng in terms of stabilizing postprandial glycemia. It has to be confirmed by more research that ginseng supplementation lowers the dietary glycemic index, which measures a carbohydrate's capacity to elevate blood sugar levels [12].

CONCLUSION

From ancient times, ginseng has been used extensively in East Asian folk medicine, primarily as a general tonic and adaptogen to preserve the body's resilience to stress and to maintain homeostasis, which includes enhancing physical and sexual performance, overall vitality, and antiaging. Immunity, cancer, diabetes, Brain functioning, and other disorders all seem to benefit from ginseng and its ginsenosides. Although while a single ginsenoside has been shown to have positive benefits on various affects or conditions, it is still unknown whether a single component or combinations of components obtained from ginseng may have the most positive effects on a variety of illnesses and conditions. Further studies on the structure-activity connection between the many ginseng ingredients, working alone or in combination, are thus necessary to anticipate and guarantee physiological and pharmacological effectiveness. Additionally, because there are numerous procedures that must be followed in order to standardize the use of ginseng root by isolating particular ginsenosides, it is obvious that ginseng extract and ginsenoside isolation must be standardised in order to have consistent

results and desirable efficacy in animal and human experiments. Lastly, in order to expand those mentioned investigations that have been carried out using animal models, large-scale, controlled clinical trials are required to evaluate the findings in terms of their application to people.

REFERENCES:

[1] H. R. Shin, J. Y. Kim, T. K. Yun, G. Morgan, and H. Vainio, "The cancer-preventive potential of Panax ginseng: A review of human and experimental evidence," *Cancer Causes Control*, 2000, doi: 10.1023/A:1008980200583.

[2] Y. Y. Lee *et al.*, "COVID-19 and Panax ginseng: Targeting platelet aggregation, thrombosis and the coagulation pathway," *Journal of Ginseng Research*. 2022. doi: 10.1016/j.jgr.2022.01.002.

[3] S. K. Park *et al.*, "The antioxidant activities of Korean Red Ginseng (Panax ginseng) and ginsenosides: A systemic review through in vivo and clinical trials," *Journal of Ginseng Research*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.jgr.2020.09.006.

[4] M. X. Li, Q. Q. Wei, and H. J. Lu, "Progress on the Elucidation of the Antinociceptive Effect of Ginseng and Ginsenosides in Chronic Pain," *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2022. doi: 10.3389/fphar.2022.821940.

[5] L. Yu *et al.*, "Target Molecular-Based Neuroactivity Screening and Analysis of Panax ginseng by Affinity Ultrafiltration, UPLC-QTOF-MS and Molecular Docking," *Am. J. Chin. Med.*, 2019, doi: 10.1142/S0192415X19500691.

[6] A. Wilkie and C. Cordess, "Ginseng - A root just like a carrot?," *J. R. Soc. Med.*, 1994, doi: 10.1177/014107689408701009.

[7] H. J. Kim *et al.*, "Effects of red ginseng on neonatal hypoxia-induced hyperacitivity phenotype in rats," *J. Ginseng Res.*, 2010, doi: 10.5142/JGR.2010.34.1.008.

[8] T. K. Yun, S. Y. Choi, and H. Y. Yun, "Epidemiological study on cancer prevention by ginseng: are all kinds of cancers preventable by ginseng?," *J. Korean Med. Sci.*, 2001, doi: 10.3346/jkms.2001.16.S.S19.

[9] A. Banskota, Y. Tezuka, Q. Tran, and S. Kadota, "Chemical Constituents and Biological Activities of Vietnamese Medicinal Plants," *Curr. Top. Med. Chem.*, 2005, doi: 10.2174/1568026033392516.

[10] Z. P. Zhao, C. Y. Zhu, D. Z. Liu, and W. F. Liu, "Concentration of ginseng extracts aqueous solution by vacuum membrane distillation 2. Theory analysis of critical operating conditions and experimental confirmation," *Desalination*, 2011, doi: 10.1016/j.desal.2010.09.017.

[11] Z. E. Jiménez-Pérez *et al.*, "Applications of Panax ginseng leaves-mediated gold nanoppapers in cosmetics relation to antioxidant, moisture retention, and whitening effect on B16BL6 cells," *J. Ginseng Res.*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.jgr.2017.04.003.

[12] H. N. Koo *et al.*, "Mountain grown ginseng induces apoptosis in HL-60 cells and its mechanism have little relation with TNF-alpha; production," *Am. J. Chin. Med.*, 2007, doi: 10.1142/S0192415X07004710.

CHAPTER 14

A BRIEF DISCUSSION ON MEDICINAL MUSHROOM

Pande Milind Sharad, Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- milind.pande27@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

The medicinal mushrooms Ganoderma lucidum, Pleurotus florida, Phellinus rimosus, and Pleurotus pulmonaris, which are found in South India, have strong antioxidant and anticancer properties. This suggested that these mushrooms might serve as beneficial sources of anti-inflammatory and anti-tumor substances. They have strong antimutagenic and anticarcinogenic properties, according to investigations. As a result, Indian medicinal mushrooms may contain chemicals that are both antioxidant and anticancer. Yet, to take advantage of their significant therapeutic usage, substantial and rigorous research is required.

KEYWORDS:

Antioxidant, Antitumor, Human Health, Fungus, Medicinal Mushroom.

INTRODUCTION

In China, Japan, and other Asian nations, the oriental fungus Ganoderma lucidum has a long history of usage for enhancing health and extending life. It has a huge, black, glossy, and woody outer mushroom. The term lucidus, which is Latin for "shiny" or "bright," alludes to the mushroom's surface's varnished look. G. lucidum is known as lingzhi in China whereas reishi or mannentake is the name of the Ganodermataceae family in Japan. The Chinese word lingzhi, which means "herb of spiritual potency," connotes both spiritual potency and the essence of immortality. It stands for prosperity, happiness, divine power, and longevity. G. lucidum is distinct among farmed mushrooms in that its medicinal rather than nutritional value is of utmost importance. Commercial G. lucidum products come in a wide range of shapes and sizes, including powders, nutritional supplements, and tea. They are made from various mushroom components, such as mycelia, spores, and fruit bodies. The particular uses and claimed health advantages of lingzhi include regulating blood sugar levels, immune system regulation, hepatoprotection, bacteriostasis, and more. The numerous ideas of G. lucidum's health advantages are generally supported by anecdotal evidence, conventional usage, and cultural mores. Recent studies, however, back up some of the historical assertions about the health advantages of lingzhi [1].

Culture, Global Use, and Product Manufacture

There have been efforts to grow the mushroom due to its erratic distribution in the wild and the rising demand for G. lucidum as a therapeutic plant. Various Ganoderma species need various cultivating environments in order to grow and develop. Also, different varieties are preferred in various geographical locations. For instance, black G. lucidum is favoured in South China whereas red G. lucidum is preferred in Japan. The subtropical parts of the Orient are home to several wild variants of G. lucidum, which flourish in hot, humid climates. G. lucidum cultivation has grown to be a significant source of the mushroom since the early s. G. lucidum has been artificially cultivated utilizing substrates including grain, sawdust, wood logs, and cork remnants. Although G. lucidum's fruiting body must be cultured for a number of months, mycelia- and culture broth-based products have gained more significance in response to calls

for tighter quality control and year-round manufacturing. Under controlled conditions, the processes and various growth parameters involved in submerged mycelial culture can be easily standardized, and purification and other downstream processing of active ingredients like polysaccharides released into the culture medium typically involve fairly straightforward procedures. Mycelial growth and the generation of biopolymers have also been observed to be significantly influenced by various culture conditions and medium compositions [2].

The simplest variety, in terms of production, consists of whole fruiting bodies that have been powdered and then transformed into capsule or tablet form. Other "nonextracted" products are created from the following three sources: dried and powdered mycelia harvested from submerged liquid cultures grown in fermentation tanks; dried and powdered substrate, mycelia, and mushroom primordia, following inoculation and incubation of a semisolid medium with fungal mycelia; and intact fungal spores or spores that have been mechanically broken or have had the spore walls removed. While spore preparations have been aggressively explored and marketed recently, it is still debatable if any extra medical benefits attributed to the removal or breaking of spore walls a step that adds to the manufacturing process and is sometimes expensive. Other products are made using components that have been extracted, typically using hot water or ethanol, from fruiting bodies or mycelia harvested from submerged liquid cultures. These components are then evaporated to dryness and tabulated/encapsulated either separately or integrated together in predetermined proportions. Due to the low processing temperature needed by supercritical fluid CO2 extraction methods, the range of extracted chemicals has increased. Several formulations have been created using powdered ganoderma, other mushrooms, and even other therapeutic plants in binary, ternary, or more complicated mixes [3].

DISCUSSION

Phosphorus, silica, sulfur, potassium, calcium, and magnesium were found to be the primary mineral constituents in the log-cultivated fruit bodies of G. lucidum. The heavy metals lead, cadmium, mercury, zinc, copper, manganese, and strontium were also found, albeit in less quantities. Unknown Ganoderma spp. fruit bodies that had been freeze-dried were found to have .2% of minerals, with potassium, calcium, and magnesium making up the majority of that amount. It's noteworthy that no cadmium nor mercury was found in these samples. Moreover, G. lucidum has a selenium content of up to g/g dry weight and has the ability to biotransform –% of the inorganic selenium in the growth substrate into proteins that contain selenium. Ganoderma species' germanium content has received some attention. Germanium was the seventh most abundant mineral found in G. lucidum fruit bodies that were taken from the wild, in terms of concentration. Several plant-based foods, such as ginseng, aloe, and garlic, contain this mineral in amounts of parts per billion.

While germanium is not a necessary element, it has been shown to have immunopotentiating, anticancer, antioxidant, and antimutagenic properties when used in small amounts. There is no concrete proof connecting the germanium content of G. lucidum with the particular health advantages connected to the fungus, despite the fact that this element has been exploited to sell goods made from G. lucidum. Proteins and lectins are a few of the other substances found in G. lucidum that may help explain its purported medical effects. Less than many other mushrooms, dried G. lucidum was discovered to have a protein level of just 7-8%. LZ-8, an immunosuppressive protein purified from the mycelia, a peptide preparation exhibiting hepatoprotective and [4] antioxidant activities, and a -kDa antifungal protein, ganodermin, which is isolated from G. lucidum fruiting bodies are reported to be bioactive proteins that contribute to the medicinal properties of G. lucidum.

Applications in therapy

The ideal outcome in the development of efficient therapeutic treatments is the combination of benefit without harm. Since G. lucidum has been used for hundreds of years as a strategy for both health promotion and treatment, there are numerous published studies that evaluate its effects on human health using both animal and cell culture models as well as in vitro testing. There are also some reports of human trials in the area. Unfortunately, there isn't a coherent body of research, and it's still unclear how this conventional medicine really performs in terms of improving human health. Studies on the effects of G. lucidum on cancer, bacterial and viral infections, diabetes, and liver damage [5].

Malignancy

G. lucidum is a well-known supplement that both cancer patients and healthy people use in conjunction with traditional therapy to strengthen their immune systems. The scientific research on G. lucidum's anticancer effects is summarized in this section [6]–[8].

Cancer is the world's biggest cause of death, and despite significant improvements in early detection and treatment, treating the illness remains a difficult therapeutic challenge. Many plant species, including mushrooms, have been examined in the hunt for novel chemopreventive and chemotherapeutic drugs. This led to the isolation of hundreds of bioactive compounds from a variety of mushroom species, including Ganoderma species that were shown to have anticancer action. The fruiting body, mycelia, or spores of G. lucidum may all be used to extract a wide variety of chemical substances. Many investigations from in vitro tests and animal and human in vivo studies have shown that many polysaccharides and triterpenes, the two primary classes of components in the mushroom, have chemopreventive and/or tumoricidal actions. Animal models with implanted tumors have shown inhibitory effects on angiogenesis and metastasis. Evidence from well-planned human trials is still lacking, however [9], [10].

CONCLUSION

A well-known Asian herbal treatment called G. lucidum has an extensive and astonishing variety of uses. The amount of G. lucidum consumed globally is significant, and there are several dietary supplements using G. lucidum as an active component that are patented and commercially accessible. They comprise extracts and isolated ingredients in a variety of formulations that are sold all over the globe as pills, lotions, syrups, and hair tonics. Numerous studies on the composition, cultivation, and purported effects of G. lucidum are being conducted as a result of its rising popularity, and there is evidence to support these claims, including data on its anticancer effects, blood glucose regulation, antioxidant, antibacterial, and antiviral effects, and protection against liver and gastric injury. Nonetheless, the majority of investigations have been carried out using cell-culture or animal models. The results of human experimental trials have often been inconsistent with those obtained in vitro and have frequently been minor. Now, in order to clearly determine if the purported health-related benefits of G. lucidum are real and substantial, the enormous abundance of chemical data and anecdotal evidence must be supplemented with trustworthy experimental and clinical data from well-designed human studies. Many difficulties arise for a variety of reasons, including dose and manufacturing quality. To identify the active ingredient of this alleged therapeutic mushroom and to ascertain its modes of action, strategies for improving quality control processes are required. These methods should define and standardize G. lucidum preparations.

REFERENCES:

[1] G. Venturella, V. Ferraro, F. Cirlincione, and M. L. Gargano, "Medicinal mushrooms: Bioactive compounds, use, and clinical trials," *International Journal of Molecular Sciences*. 2021. doi: 10.3390/ijms22020634.

[2] M. Jeitler *et al.*, "Significance of Medicinal Mushrooms in Integrative Oncology: A Narrative Review," *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2020. doi: 10.3389/fphar.2020.580656.

[3] B. Jakopovic, N. Oršolić, and I. Jakopovich, "Proteomic research on the antitumor properties of medicinal mushrooms," *Molecules*. 2021. doi: 10.3390/molecules 26216708.

[4] V. K. Chaturvedi, S. Agarwal, K. K. Gupta, P. W. Ramteke, and M. P. Singh, "Medicinal mushroom: boon for therapeutic applications," *3 Biotech*. 2018. doi: 10.1007/s13205-018-1358-0.

[5] S. Mahfuz and X. Piao, "Use of medicinal mushrooms in layer ration," *Animals*. 2019. doi: 10.3390/ani9121014.

[6] G. Hetland, E. Johnson, S. V. Bernardshaw, and B. Grinde, "Can medicinal mushrooms have prophylactic or therapeutic effect against COVID-19 and its pneumonic superinfection and complicating inflammation?," *Scandinavian Journal of Immunology*. 2021. doi: 10.1111/sji.12937.

[7] S. K. Yadav *et al.*, "A Mechanistic Review on Medicinal Mushrooms-Derived Bioactive Compounds: Potential Mycotherapy Candidates for Alleviating Neurological Disorders," *Planta Medica*. 2020. doi: 10.1055/a-1177-4834.

[8] T. A. Ajith and K. K. Janardhanan, "Indian medicinal mushrooms as a source of antioxidant and antitumor agents," *Journal of Clinical Biochemistry and Nutrition*. 2007. doi: 10.3164/jcbn.40.157.

[9] S. Shaffique, S. M. Kang, A. Y. Kim, M. Imran, M. A. Khan, and I. J. Lee, "Current knowledge of medicinal mushrooms related to anti-oxidant properties," *Sustainability (Switzerland)*. 2021. doi: 10.3390/su13147948.

[10] S. Agrawal and N. K. Jha, "Medicinal mushrooms," *J. Crit. Rev.*, 2020, doi: 10.31838/jcr.07.09.259.

CHAPTER 15

A BRIEF DISCUSSION ON TEA'S HEALTH ADVANTAGES

Rajesh Kumar Sharma, Associate Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- rajeshsharma7529@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

Due to its palatable flavor and supposedly positive health benefits, tea is one of the most consumed beverages. While tea intake has been linked to health advantages from the beginning of time, scientific research into this beverage and its ingredients has just recently begun, only approximately years ago. Consuming tea, particularly green tea, has been linked to a lower incidence of chronic pathologies including cancer and cardiovascular conditions where oxidative stress has been documented to play a role.

KEYWORDS:

Anti-Inflammatory Cancer, Enzymes, Oxidative Stress.

INTRODUCTION

The high concentration of bioactive compounds, such as polyphenols, found in teas may be responsible for the health advantages associated with their ingestion. According to studies, polyphenols have antioxidant, antiviral, and anti-inflammatory properties. They also control detoxification enzymes, boost immune system activity, and reduce platelet aggregation. Epigallocatechin gallate has been determined to be mostly responsible for the health-promoting properties of GT among all tea polyphenols. Due to its greater EGCG level, green tea has been shown to generally have better health benefits than black tea, while the effects of black tea's thearubigins and theaflavins have not been well studied. Strong proof that tea polyphenols have the bioactivity to postpone the beginning of risk factors linked to disease development may be found in in vitro and animal research [1].

There may be a modifying influence of tea on gene transcription, cell proliferation, and other molecular activities, according to studies done on cell cultures and animal models. Clinical research has shown that there are a number of physiological reactions to tea that may be important for the prevention or treatment of various chronic illnesses as well as the promotion of health. This chapter discusses contemporary research on tea's medical characteristics and health advantages, paying particular attention to its anti-inflammatory and antioxidant capabilities, which are important defenses against cancer and CVD.

Tea use, trade volume, method of consumption, preparation, and processing BT, oolong tea, GT, and white tea are the four varieties of tea that are most often purchased from the market. These differences are due to various processing methods or, in the case of white tea, various harvesting periods. While the buds are still coated in the fine white hair, white tea leaves are collected and selected before they completely unfold. To stop the oxidation of the polyphenols in white tea and GT, the leaves are promptly heated after harvesting. Young C. Sinensis leaves are subjected to oxidation for –0 minutes before drying out in the process of making BT. This process involves rolling the leaves, which disturbs the cellular compartment and brings phenolic chemicals into touch with polyphenol oxidases. [2] Theaflavins and thearubigins are complicated condensation products created during this "fermentation" process, which transforms flavan-3-ols. Oolong tea, mostly made in Taiwan and sold to Japan and Germany,

is created with a shorter fermentation time than BT and is said to have a flavor and appearance that fall between GT and BT [3], [4].

Molecular aspects of Antioxidant Activity

According to experimental research, tea polyphenols may indirectly protect by triggering endogenous defense mechanisms. Cellular redox state controls the transcription of several antioxidant genes. Exogenous and endogenous antioxidants seem to work closely together and in concert, according to a number of lines of evidence. It is conceivable that the antioxidant response elements found in the promoter regions of many of the genes activated by oxidative and chemical stressors are responsible for this connection. Findings overwhelmingly support the idea that tea polyphenols may activate antioxidant transcription and cleanse defense mechanisms through ARE. A cis-acting transcriptional regulatory element called an ARE, also known as the "electrophile response element," is involved in the activation of the genes that code for several antioxidant proteins and phase II detoxifying enzymes, such as glutathione peroxidase, heme oxygenase 1, -glutamylcysteine synthetase, superoxide dismutase, and glutathione reductase. The transcription factor that controls the constitutive and inducible expression of AREregulated genes is nuclear factor-erythroid 2-related factor 2. Nfr2 is sequestered in the cytoplasm alongside the actin cytoskeleton when Nfr2 is coupled to kelch-like ECH-associated protein-1 under normal physiological circumstances. Phase II detoxifying enzymes and antioxidant genes are transcriptionally activated when Nfr2 dissociates from Keap1, translocates to the nucleus, and binds to ARE sequences with other basic leucine zinc zipper transcription factor family members like Maf under conditions of increased oxidative or xenobiotic stress.

DISCUSSION

The Scientific Evidence of the Health Effects

According to the information provided below, tea polyphenols included in black and green tea may have a preventive impact against heart disease and various malignancies [5]. Green tea's anti-cancer properties there are many distinct types of cancer, not just one, and each has a unique prognosis that is greatly influenced by the patient's reaction. The tools we have to fight cancer often have a limited impact. Only palliative treatment is available for the patient when a malignancy becomes very aggressive. Notable examples include aggressive prostate, pancreatic, breast, and lung cancers. Although malignancies do not often have a strong hereditary component, lifestyle has long been seen as a major risk factor. Hence, even though it was only recently realized, it is often thought that the most effective treatment is to stop or slow the spread of subclinical cancer into more severe stages.

Chemoprevention is defined as a pharmacological intervention method using natural or synthesized substances that may suppress, prevent, postpone, or even reverse carcinogenesis. Studies and theories on GT's potential anticancer properties have been thoroughly researched going back a long time. The ultimate finding that active substances such the catechins, which are abundant in GT, may be helpful in this respect is based on three primary lines of knowledge. Preclinical data make up the second stream, which is based on epidemiological research. The third stream, which is still in its infancy, is based on clinical studies. Epidemiology supports the growing agreement that GT use lowers cancer risk, despite the fact that debate in each of these fields is still rather open. Epidemiological results are supported by studies utilizing several in vitro and in vivo experimental systems. Several cancer models, including those of the lung, mammary gland, skin, esophagus, stomach, liver, pancreas, intestine, and colon, have shown that GT possesses anticancer properties.

Human Prostate Cancer and Green Tea Catechin Extract

Prostate cancer is now a serious health issue that is slowly but steadily becoming worse as the population ages. It is the second largest cause of cancer-related mortality among men in Western nations. Prostate cancer has lately been identified as the most deadly malignancy plaguing men, and this hazard is especially acute in Italy. The fact that Italians are now the oldest population in Europe may be linked to this discovery. Due to its high prevalence and protracted latency period before becoming clinically obvious, prostate cancer is an excellent target for chemoprevention. Many possible chemopreventive medicines, such as COX-2 inhibitors, 5-reductase inhibitors, and vitamin D analogs, have previously been studied. Since findings from epidemiological and case control studies support the hypothesis that bioactive chemicals isolated from GT, like as catechins, have a chemopreventive impact, GTEs particularly rich in catechins have lately been employed as natural substances.

The potential mechanism of GTCs' anticancer action has received substantial examination. Supporting data shows that GTCs cause apoptosis in cancer cells through a mechanism unrelated to changed activity of the B cell lymphoma 2 family members, even if the molecular underpinnings of GTC action are yet unknown. The most physiologically active catechin, EGCG, has been proven to suppress angiogenesis, depriving tumor cells of essential nutrients. Moreover, several liver phase II enzymes necessary for the detoxification of xenobiotics and chemical carcinogens have been reported to be stimulated by the GTCs. Moreover, it was shown that GTCs had the ability to inhibit MMP-9, urokinase, and metalloproteinase 2 to have antimetastatic effects. The EGCG has been demonstrated to downregulate the androgen receptor in human prostate cancer cells in culture. The evidence for a substantial antiproliferative impact of GTCs in cultured human prostate cancer cells has therefore been shown by a profusion of research studies. Specifically against cancer cells, the antiproliferative impact was shown in vitro [6], [7].

Cardiovascular Tea

Diseases Atherosclerosis is the primary pathophysiological component in cardiovascular illnesses, which account for % of mortality in Western nations over the age of. A persistent inflammatory process called atherogenesis occurs when circulating blood and cellular components interact intricately with the cells of the arterial wall. This process manifests in the arteries at a young age as "fatty streaks," which are accumulations of lipids in the subintimal region. Fatty streaks, which are subendothelial clumps of foam cells that are lipid-laden and mostly macrophages, may advance to fibrous plaques, which are the hallmark lesions of developing atherosclerosis. The GTC activity cytokines and growth factors resulted in the fibrous plaque, which is mostly made up of smooth muscle cells. Fibrous plaques may develop into a complicated lesion that is most often linked to clinical atherosclerosis via calcification, necrosis, hemorrhages, ulceration, or thrombosis [8].

The biological importance of tea's in vivo catabolism should be the main topic of future studies on the impact of tea on human health. According to Section .4.1, the majority of the polyphenols found in tea undergo significant change when they interact with human and microbial enzymes, with the possible exception of EGCG. As the chemicals produced by this interaction are concentrated in body fluids, investigations on human intervention should investigate their long-term impacts. Moreover, there are significant differences in gut microbiota across individuals, which might indicate distinct microbial metabolism and, as a result, various biological impacts. Hence, to screen for potential interactions, future intervention studies should take each volunteer's intestinal microbiota composition into account. Further proof about the mechanism of action by which the antioxidant benefit of tea

consumption is provided is needed. Uncovering potential mechanisms of antioxidant activity, such as the activation of endogenous redox-controlled pathways or the direct impact of polyphenol metabolites, can help identify the effect's causing components in long-term intervention studies. Human experimentation data points to a possible function for GT in influencing in vivo inflammatory response. Before making any firm conclusions on the anti-inflammatory activity of tea polyphenols, however, the small number of research and the divergent outcomes obtained strongly highlight the need to increase the body of data in focused human intervention trials [9], [10].

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, scientific evidence of the beneficial impacts of tea intake on CVD and cancer is accumulating. The molecules responsible for this effect's method of action, however, remains unclear, despite the fact that endothelial function, anti-inflammatory, and antioxidant effects seem to be major contributors. Tea catechins continue to have a significant role in the biological activity of teas despite the absence of compelling evidence in long-term intervention trials. To determine if catechins are supporting components or essential molecules involved in the biological features of GT, however, focused human studies using appropriate placebo or pure molecules are required. In the meanwhile, encouraging people to drink more tea, which has very little calories, should be done.

REFERENCES:

[1] A. Nunes, M. Alves, P. Moreira, P. Oliveira, and B. Silva, “Can Tea Consumption be a Safe and Effective Therapy Against Diabetes Mellitus-Induced Neurodegeneration?,” *Curr. Neuropharmacol.*, 2014, doi: 10.2174/1570159x13666141204220539.

[2] S. Jayakeerthana, “Benefits of green tea: A review,” *Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences and Research*. 2016.

[3] “The story of tea: a cultural history and drinking guide,” *Choice Rev. Online*, 2008, doi: 10.5860/choice.45-3757.

[4] K. Zhu, J. Ouyang, J. Huang, and Z. Liu, “Research progress of black tea thearubigins: a review,” *Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition*. 2021. doi: 10.1080/10408398.2020.1762161.

[5] L. Landini, E. Rebelos, and M.-J. Honka, “Green Tea from the Far East to the Drug Store: Focus on the Beneficial Cardiovascular Effects,” *Curr. Pharm. Des.*, 2020, doi: 10.2174/1381612826666201102104902.

[6] T. R. Dias, M. G. Alves, S. Casal, B. M. Silva, and P. F. Oliveira, “The single and synergistic effects of the major tea components caffeine, epigallocatechin-3-gallate and l-theanine on rat sperm viability,” *Food Funct.*, 2016, doi: 10.1039/c5fo01611h.

[7] H. I. Ingólfsson, R. E. Koeppe, and O. S. Andersen, “Effects of green tea catechins on gramicidin channel function and inferred changes in bilayer properties,” *FEBS Lett.*, 2011, doi: 10.1016/j.febslet.2011.08.040.

[8] C. Nyarukowa, R. Koech, S. Kamunya, R. Mose, and Z. Apostolides, “UPLC-MS based metabolomics analysis reveals metabolite compositional differences between Kenyan Commercial and NonCommercial black tea (Camellia sinensis L.) cultivars.,” *Nat. Resour. Hum. Heal.*, 2021, doi: 10.53365/nrfhh/140906.

[9] N. Faiz, V. Vishnu Priya, and R. Gayathri, "The health effects of green tea - A survey," *Int. J. Res. Pharm. Sci.*, 2018, doi: 10.26452/ijrps.v9i2.1511.

[10] D. Qiao *et al.*, "Comprehensive identification of the full-length transcripts and alternative splicing related to the secondary metabolism pathways in the tea plant (Camellia sinensis)," *Sci. Rep.*, 2019, doi: 10.1038/s41598-019-39286-z.

CHAPTER 16

GOLDEN SPICE OF TURMERIC: FROM TRADITIONAL TO MODERN MEDICINE

Rajesh Kumar Sharma, Associate Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- rajeshsharma7529@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

Throughout human history, natural plant products have been employed for a variety of reasons. Many of the plants from which these natural compounds are generated are billions of years old, having co-evolved with animal life. As a natural defense against illness and infection, higher plants manufacture tens of thousands of these compounds called secondary metabolites. Several of these natural compounds contain pharmacological or biological properties that may be used in the development of pharmaceutical drugs. Plant-based medicines have been essential to the health care of many societies, both ancient and contemporary.

KEYWORDS:

Cancer, Conventional Medicine, Contemporary Medicine, Enzymes, Human Health, Inflammatory, Turmeric.

INTRODUCTION

Ayurveda, an Indian holistic medical approach, primarily employs plant-based medications or formulations to treat a variety of illnesses, including cancer. Most of the 7 small-molecule medications that were distributed globally between and had their roots in natural ingredients. Despite the fact that many synthetic medications are created using combinatorial chemistry, plant-based pharmaceuticals are better acceptable for human use at least in terms of biochemistry. Yet, neither has modern medicine promoted nor placed a high value on using natural items for medical purposes. The usage of the turmeric plant for medical purposes dates back over years. Turmeric is utilized in Southeast Asia both as a primary spice and as a part of religious rituals. Turmeric, which has a vivid yellow hue, is often referred to as "Indian saffron" because of this. The more than papers on turmeric that have been published in the past years show that modern medicine has started to understand its significance. The safety and effectiveness of turmeric are further discussed after discussing in vitro research, animal studies, and ultimately studies conducted on people [1].

The Makeup of Turmeric

Turmeric has more than 0 components that have been identified. Turmeric has additional coloring compounds known as curcuminoids in addition to its volatile oil, which is the root's major component and contains turmerone. Curcuminoids, which are discovered to be natural antioxidants, include curcumin demethoxycurcumin, 5′-methoxycurcumin, and dihydrocurcumin. Curcumin, moisture, and extraneous material are all present in turmeric in its typical form. Sesquiterpenes come in a wide range, with many of them being species-specific, such as germacrone, termerone, ar-, -, and -termerones, -bisabolene, -curcumene, zingiberene, and -sesquiphellanderene. Turmeric's scent is caused by three compounds: turmerone, arturmerone, and zingiberene. The rhizomes are also said to contain cholesterol, 2-hydroxymethyl anthraquinone, stigmasterole, -sitosterole, and four novel polysaccharides called ukonans.

DISCUSSION

Traditional Medicine, Turmeric

Throughout the years, turmeric has been employed in many sections of the world's traditional medicine in medicinal concoctions. Turmeric is said to provide a variety of medical benefits in Ayurveda traditions, including boosting bodily energy, reducing gas, getting rid of worms, enhancing digestion, controlling menstruation, removing gallstones, and alleviating arthritis. It is used as an antibacterial agent and an antiseptic in several South Asian nations for wounds, burns, and bruises. It is used in Pakistan as an anti-inflammatory as a treatment for digestive illnesses such irritable bowel syndrome that cause stomach pain. Turmeric is applied on a piece of burned cloth and put over a wound in Pakistan and Afghanistan to clean the wound and speed healing. In addition to its Ayurvedic uses, turmeric is used in India to treat skin disorders and cleanse the blood. In certain regions of India, ladies use turmeric paste to remove extra hair. In certain regions of India, Bangladesh, and Pakistan, turmeric paste is applied on the skin of the bride and groom before the wedding because it is said to make the skin shine and prevent dangerous germs from entering the body. Many sunscreens now utilize turmeric in their composition. Face creams with turmeric as their main ingredient are produced by a number of global corporations. Turmeric is a well-known remedy for a number of respiratory ailments in Ayurveda medicine, as well as liver diseases, anorexia, rheumatism, diabetic sores, runny nose, cough, and sinusitis. In traditional Chinese medicine, it is used to treat disorders related with stomach discomfort [2].

In both Ayurveda and traditional Chinese medicine, turmeric is considered a bitter digestive and a carminative. Turmeric is also used by unani practitioners to remove phlegm or kapha and to widen blood vessels to enhance blood flow. To enhance digestion and lessen gas and bloating, it may be added to meals like rice and bean dishes. It is a cholagogue, promoting bile excretion via the gallbladder and bile synthesis in the liver, which enhances the body's capacity to digest fats. Turmeric is sometimes used to treat digestive issues as well as colds and sore throats by combining it with milk or water.

A TRANSITION FROM TRADITIONAL TO MODERN MEDICINE

While it has been used often to treat a variety of disorders, modern medicine is just a few decades old. In contrast, traditional medicine has helped people for thousands of years and is both safe and effective. Traditional medicine's mechanism or scientific foundation, however, is less clear.

Turmeric in Vitro Research

Across the Orient, turmeric is historically used for both prevention and treatment of ailments. Turmeric is a powerful antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antimutagenic, antibacterial, and anticancer agent, according to contemporary in vitro research. Turmeric, used in cooking and in home medicines, has considerable antioxidant capacities at varied degrees of activity. According to studies, eating curries in vivo may provide enough turmeric to provide optimal antioxidant protection. As an antioxidant, turmeric extracts may boost antioxidant enzymes, scavenge free radicals, and prevent lipid peroxidation [3]. In addition to these advantages, turmeric contains potent antibacterial qualities. At a 5% concentration, garlic and turmeric extracts prevented the development of bacteria that produce histamine. Turmeric was also discovered to decrease histamine generation in Morganella morganii. Turmeric's ability to reduce histamine synthesis and histidine decarboxylase activity, however, is inferior to that of cinnamon and clove. The development of the foodborne pathogen V. parahaemolyticus was shown to be sensitively inhibited by turmeric extract.

In addition to having these advantages, adding turmeric to the food helped broiler chickens acquire weight more quickly and had a smaller relative liver weight. Also, turmeric restored antioxidant capabilities in terms of the amount of peroxides, superoxide dismutase activity, and total antioxidant concentration in broiler chicks' livers, reducing the negative effects of aflatoxin on several serum chemistry parameters.

As a digestive stimulant, turmeric works. It improved the functions of pancreatic lipase, chymotrypsin, and amylase as a dietary supplement. In addition, combining turmeric with other spices including coriander, red chile, black pepper, and cumin significantly increased bile flow and bile acid production. Turmeric has been shown by Mukerji, Zaidi, and Singh to enhance the mucin content of rabbit gastric juice. Turmeric has a local anesthetic effect, according to studies by Farnsworth and Bunyapraphatsara, Supniewski and Hano, and Prucksunand et al. After consuming turmeric, the stomach's antrum may suppress the release of the gastrin hormone. In the antrum of the stomach, turmeric may have local membrane-anesthetizing properties that suppress gastrin release similarly to oxethazaine, the active component of strocain. This is the rationale for the use of turmeric before meals [4], [5].

Using Turmeric several human disorders have been examined to see whether turmeric is effective. In one research, the antimutagenic benefits of turmeric were studied in chronic smokers. It was shown that giving these smokers 1.5 g of turmeric daily for days considerably decreased the amount of mutagens they excreted in their urine. On the other hand, there was no difference in the urine excretion of mutagens among six non-smokers. These findings imply that turmeric consumption is a potent antimutagen and may aid in chemoprevention. Another research looked at how people with irritable bowel syndrome responded to turmeric. IBS prevalence and the level of abdominal pain/discomfort were both markedly reduced when 1 or 2 tablets of a standardized turmeric extract were taken each day for 8 weeks.

Turmeric alcohol extract provided defense against BaP-induced expansion of micronuclei in circulating lymphocytes of healthy people. In a second trial, the scientists used turmeric extract to treat patients with oral submucous fibrosis for three months. Before and after receiving therapy with turmeric extract, the quantity of micronuclei from oral exfoliated cells of OSF patients was counted. They discovered that the amount of micronuclei in oral exfoliated cells significantly reduced and was equivalent to that of healthy, normal persons. Peptic ulcers may also be treated with turmeric, it was discovered.

Individuals with peptic ulcers got 2 capsules of turmeric orally, five times per day, in a phase II clinical research. Following 4 weeks of therapy, ulcers were found to be absent in % of instances. The percentage of ulcer-free patients rose to % after weeks of therapy. Turmeric was shown to be beneficial for those with indigestion and for those who had stomach or intestinal ulcers in a double-blind experiment, although it was found to be less effective than antacids. Patients with external malignant tumors were observed to have great symptomatic alleviation with a turmeric ethanol extract. In a study of individuals, decrease in scent was found in % of the cases and reduction of itching in virtually all instances. Lesion size and discomfort were reduced in some individuals.

The volatile oil from turmeric is beneficial in treating respiratory tract issues. The volatile oil has sputum-removing, cough-relieving, and asthma-prevention properties. As a result, turmeric volatile oil may be a useful medication for the treatment of respiratory conditions. This oil works as a mosquito repellent for both daytime and nighttime bites. At doses of 0.1, 0.5, and 1 M, hexane extracts of C. comosa, a native to Thailand and historically used to treat uterine inflammation, were shown to dramatically reduce LPS-induced NO and PGE2 generation. Moreover, it reduced the expression of COX-2 and iNOS [6].

Safety, effectiveness, and potential conflicts. Since ancient times, turmeric has been used both as a spice and a common home treatment with no known adverse effects. It is evident that turmeric is not harmful even at extremely high concentrations since no research in either people or animals have shown any toxic consequences linked to its usage. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration has issued a 0-page monograph and performed its own clinical research using turmeric. The FDA has designated curcumin, the primary ingredient in turmeric, as GRAS. As a result, mustard, cereals, chips, cheese, butter, and other items are today made in the United States using turmeric and its components. Turmeric oil was given orally to healthy participants for three months as part of a phase I clinical trial looking at the safety and tolerability of turmeric oil usage. Use of turmeric oil for three months had no negative effects on body weight, blood pressure, or toxicity to the liver, kidneys, or hematology [7]–[9].

CONCLUSION

The usual method for obtaining turmeric's health benefits is via long-term, low-dose food ingestion. For turmeric to be used rationally in the treatment of human illnesses, a detailed knowledge of the effective dosage, safety, and mechanism of action is necessary. If turmeric is to be used for addressing human needs and enhancing human wellbeing, more clinical investigations are required. Turmeric has a number of beneficial effects on the body, including digestive, antibacterial, antiviral, anti-inflammatory, anti-tumor, antioxidant, and antiseptic properties. Curcumin, volatile oil, and curcuminoids, among many other substances discovered via phytochemical research of turmeric, have been proven to have strong pharmacological activities.

REFERENCES:

[1] "Turmeric — The Golden Spice of Life," in *Turmeric*, 2020. doi: 10.1201/9781420006322-7.

[2] S. C. Gupta, B. Sung, J. H. Kim, S. Prasad, S. Li, and B. B. Aggarwal, "Multitargeting by turmeric, the golden spice: From kitchen to clinic," *Molecular Nutrition and Food Research*. 2013. doi: 10.1002/mnfr.201100741.

[3] V. Di Nardo *et al.*, "Use of curcumin in psoriasis," *Open Access Macedonian Journal of Medical Sciences*. 2018. doi: 10.3889/oamjms.2018.055.

[4] S. Prasad, S. C. Gupta, A. K. Tyagi, and B. B. Aggarwal, "Curcumin, a component of golden spice: From bedside to bench and back," *Biotechnology Advances*. 2014. doi: 10.1016/j.biotechadv.2014.04.004.

[5] N. Tabassum Khan, "Miracles of the Golden Spice-Turmeric," *SM Dermatology J.*, 2019, doi: 10.36876/smdj.1031.

[6] R. Prasad Yadav, G. Tarun, and C. Roshan Prasad Yadav, "Versatility of turmeric: A review the golden spice of life," *~ 41 ~ J. Pharmacogn. Phytochem.*, 2017.

[7] J. P. Sahoo *et al.*, "The Golden Spice Turmeric (<i>Curcuma longa</i>) and Its Feasible Benefits in Prospering Human Health—A Review," *Am. J. Plant Sci.*, 2021, doi: 10.4236/ajps.2021.123030.

[8] S. Prasad and B. Aggarwal, "Turmeric, the Golden Spice," 2011. doi: 10.1201/b10787-14.

[9] D. J. Sun *et al.*, "Diarylheptanoid: A privileged structure in drug discovery," *Fitoterapia*. 2020. doi: 10.1016/j.fitote.2020.104490.

CHAPTER 17

CHINESE WOLFBERRY: BIOMOLECULAR AND CLINICAL ASPECTS

Phool Chandra, Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- chandraphool@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

Chinese consumers currently regard the wolfberry's health advantages, which have been documented through the empirical discoveries of Chinese physicians over hundreds of years, as being mostly for vision and age-related problems. Current research on the biomolecular effects of certain herbs and how they relate to clinical outcomes and the promotion of human health is the main focus of Biomolecular and Clinical Aspects. It contains experimental methods for examining the herbal medicines' bioactive elements. The ethical issues surrounding the use of herbal medicine and its incorporation into contemporary, evidence-based medicine are also covered in this book.

KEYWORDS:

Biomolecular, Chinese medicine, Materia Medica, Polysaccharide, wolfberry.

INTRODUCTION

The wolfberry fruit has been used in traditional Chinese medicine for over years. Its usage was originally documented in Shen, a prehistoric book that records the agricultural and medical skills of the legendary Chinese emperor Shen Nong, approximately 0 BCE. The earliest book on Chinese herbs, the Shen Nong Ben Cao Jing, has 5 traditional herbs that are divided into three grades: top, medium, and bottom. One of the 0 top-grade herbs, wolfberry was formerly thought to provide exceptional health advantages and to be completely safe for people. The long-term usage of wolfberries was thought to strengthen the body, maintain fitness, lengthen life, and make living easier throughout the seasons. The Compendium of Materia Medica, written by Li Shi-Zhen in the sixteenth century, is another well-known TCM treatise that is regarded as the first pharmacopoeia in the world and the most significant one to have been written on TCM. In this work, the morphological identification, health advantages, indications, and pertinent prescriptions of wolfberry are particularly elaborated.

In addition to the fruit, the wolfberry plant's flower, leaf, seed, and root bark have all been used in documented cases. According to TCM, wolfberries have a "calm" character and a "sweet" taste. According to TCM theory and practice, wolfberries can influence both the "liver channel" and the "kidney channel," and their capacity to nourish and tonify the liver and kidney, improve jing and improve eye function are their main health benefits. It should be mentioned that wolfberries are used by Chinese people as a common meal in their everyday lives to promote overall health, in addition to being prescribed as a medication in TCM to cure ailments. Wolfberry is one of TCM components that may be used as both regular food and functional food, in accordance with the rules of the China State Food and Drug Administration [1].

Chinese consumers currently regard the wolfberry's health advantages, which have been documented through the empirical discoveries of Chinese physicians over hundreds of years, as being mostly for vision and age-related problems. The various scientific investigations that have been carried out in China over the last years also reflect this popular perspective. In,

Professor S. Bai of Yinchuan, Ningxia, China, presented the first study on this topic in two volumes that included 2 Chinese research papers on wolfberry. Most current studies go through the scientific data supporting wolfberry's bioactivities in the global literature that was released after. A warning was issued that there is no evidence "to justify claims for a quasi-miraculous potion for immortality" due to gaps in the scientific literature. This is especially true for the rather ill-defined wolfberry polysaccharide and glycoconjugate fraction known as Lycium barbarum polysaccharide, which is marketed as a special bioactive with immuno-modulating, anticancer, and antioxidant potential.

Wolfberry advantages are widely recognized and highly valued in TCM, although there is conflicting scientific data to support these claims. This review's main goal is to demonstrate the many health advantages of wolfberry from a rigorous scientific and clinical standpoint. This chapter presents arguments and data suggesting that LBP is not particularly exceptional and that many of its potential advantages stem from indirect data. We also call attention to innovative and inspiring research projects being undertaken by academics, such as those examining wolfberry research from new angles, such as how it can prevent neuronal death in neurodegenerative illnesses. Novel concepts about the transport of bioactives from wolfberry, and other TCM herbs in general, are also a part of this review [2].

Wolfberry Fruit Description and Traditional Use

The majority of wolfberry fruit produced is dried in the sun, and dried berries are often eaten in China as part of a normal diet. Common ingredients in TCM, supplements, and commercial food items include dried wolfberries. In addition to being extensively used in soups, stews, and herbal teas, wolfberry is also often used to prepare functional wines by soaking it in wine, either by itself or in combination with other TCM components.

Wolfberry Origin, Identification, and Characterization

Common shrubs like wolfberries have tiny, purple blossoms and delicate, delicious leaves. It naturally grows in China's northern and western areas, and when it is grown, the plant may grow to a height of around 2 meters. The fruit is generally spindle-shaped or ellipsoidal, measuring 6– mm in length and 3– mm in diameter. The two most widely grown species in China are L. chinense Miller and L. barbarum L. The species L. barbarum is extensively grown for medicine in north and northwest China, notably near the Yellow River in Ningxia Province. The majority of the commercially grown wolfberry fruit grown in China comes from L. barbarum and is sourced from Ningxia. for a for a for for and an an an an an an an an an an an an a and an a. Genuine origin often refers to an area having the best growth conditions , a lengthy history of production, and a significant volume of a certain plant. As a result, a herb grown under such circumstances is referred to be a "genuine herb" and is seen to be of superior quality than a similar herb grown in another area. The Compendium of Materia Medica is where the claim that Ningxia is the true home of the wolfberry first appeared. Modern investigation has shown that wolfberries from Ningxia have greater concentrations of minerals and active compounds, supporting this traditional knowledge [3].

Foxberry Is Used In Traditional Chinese Medicine

In TCM, wolfberries are mostly used to treat "yin deficit" in the liver and kidney. In TCM medicines, the dried fruit is often used at a dosage of 6– g, eaten twice or three times day. It is used as a decoction in formulations to treat liver "qi stagnation" and yin deficit. Wolfberry may also be found in a blend of Chinese herbs that is powdered finely and used to manufacture -g honey tablets, which are a typical TCM formulation in which honey serves as the primary

excipient. Take one of these tablets in the morning with some bland soup, and the other in the evening on an empty stomach.

Use of wolfberry-based foods, beverages, and nutritional supplements

With other herbs like as cassia, poria cocos, chrysanthemum, and others, wolfberry is often used in herbal teas for liver preservation, anti-aging, and weight loss. Consumer research surveys among urban Chinese people reveal that one of the most popular wolfberry delivery methods is tea. Wolfberry is often used as a tonic element in soups and to produce sweet or savory porridge in South China, where understanding of Chinese herbs and their health advantages is greater than in the rest of the nation. Moreover, wolfberry is regularly used to traditional hot pot, which is a highly well-liked, healthful food in southwest China and the major cities. In recent years, China has seen an increase in the number of new product releases and the usage of wolfberry in processed foods and drinks [4], [5].

DISCUSSION

The Amount of Wolfberry Use

In TCM, it is important to remember that herbal wolfberry formulae typically include no more than g of wolfberry fruit and should only be taken up to three times per day. Typically, wolfberries are cleaned before being cooked with other foods or combined with hot or boiling water to produce herbal tea. It is challenging to estimate the average daily consumption of wolfberries. To give you an idea, 0 tons of dried wolfberry fruit were produced in China overall in. According to Chinese tradition, wolfberries are consumed more often by persons over the age of because they are said to offer antiaging benefits, improve immune system function, and preserve vision. Given that wolfberry is one of the most well-known Chinese herbs and culinary components and is often available for purchase in supermarkets throughout the nation, it is probably consumed by a sizable portion of the adult Chinese population. Wolfberry is also highly well-liked by Chinese people who reside outside of China. Wolfberry fruit was utilized by % of respondents in a research among Chinese in the Chinatowns of Oakland and San Francisco in the United States. In this research, 8 people were questioned, and it was the third most often used Chinese herb, behind ginseng and a well-known cooling herb concoction called qing bu liang .

Evidence for safety and health concerns from a variety of Human Experiences

There are almost no instances of negative outcomes in the extremely long history of wolfberry traditional usage. Seldom are human safety data published. Wolfberry contains betaine, which is known to protect the liver but may also be used to cause menstruation and induce abortions, thus pregnant people should avoid using it. Chinese herbalists advise against taking wolfberry while you have the flu or a cold. Wolfberry has an estrogen-mimicking action , thus those who are pregnant or have conditions that are estrogen-sensitive shouldn't take it [6], [7].

Identification Of Bioactives

The fruit of the wolfberry plant is known to contain various potentially bioactive components, according to scientific literature published in the previous years. We specifically examine three of including the carotenoid zeaxanthin, the vitamin C precursor 2-O- ascorbic acid, and the arabinogalactanproteins.

Lycium Barbarum L. Contains Bioactive Glycoconjugates Of Arabinogalactan-Proteins

According to published research, wolfberry fruit includes soluble macromolecules with a variety of bioactivities. These characteristics are ascribed to soluble glycoconjugates known as

"arabinogalactan-proteins", but are more often referred to as "L. barbarum polysaccharide" in Chinese literature. Various wolfberry glycoconjugates molecular forms have been partly identified, and their structural characteristics and immunomodulating qualities have been discussed.

Lycium barbarum Polysaccharide Recovery Optimization Wolberry

Our lab's experiments shown that 2-3% of dried wolfberries may be solubilized as high-molecular-weight polysaccharides using cold water extraction. Around 0.4% of this total is present as a Yariv-precipitatable fraction, which corresponds to the glycoconjugates known as AGPs. The majority of the remaining soluble carbohydrate was made up of pectic polysaccharides. A combination of cellulose, pectic, and hemicellulosic polysaccharides, which are often found in the cell walls of dicotyledonous fruit, made up the cold water-insoluble polysaccharide fraction, which made up around % of the wolfberries. Long-term high-temperature extraction or enzymatic treatment have both been shown to increase LBP production. It is doubtful that much more glycoconjugates will be solubilized by a more rigorous extraction process since the AGPs are easily dissolved in cold water. The breakdown and solubilization of the wolfberry fruit's insoluble cell walls resulted in the breakdown and solubilization of pectic and hemicellulosic polymers, which are most likely the source of the higher quantities of polysaccharides recovered by these methods [8].

Bioactive Characteristics

Generally speaking, arabinogalactans and AGPs have well-established bioactive characteristics. ImmunEnhancer AG sells larch arabinogalactan, a substance that is not an AGP. ImmunEnhancer may improve immune system function in addition to its role in promoting digestive health. It operates in this role by preventing bacteria and viruses from binding to cell membranes on the liver and other organs, so blocking infections from getting established. Larch AG has reportedly been found to hinder tumor spread to the liver. The advantages of AG and AGPs don't seem to have a source; rather, they seem to be a result of the structural similarities between them. Hence it seems sense that wolfberry AGPs would exhibit the same bioactive qualities as those identified for AGs and AGPs from other plant sources. More than 0 publications have been published on the chemistry and health advantages of L. barbarum fruit since the mid-s. Among them, more than expressly mention polysaccharide-related capabilities. Nevertheless, instead of a pure glycoconjugate, several of these research have employed a "soluble polysaccharide" extract. As a result, not all bioactivities that have been described can be fully attributable to the fruit's AGP concentration.

The three interconnected areas of immune system regulation, anticancer activity, and antioxidant activity have been the key areas of study attention. An early research found that LBPs activated T cells to generate interleukin -2 in the elderly. One of the first soluble "hormonelike" mediators of the immune system to be identified was interleukin-2, which sparked interest in the area of immunology since it revealed the critical function of cytokines. Gan et al. used a partially purified glycoconjugate to support an earlier study that demonstrated the glycoconjugate's efficacy in increasing the expression of the cytokines IL-2 and tumor necrosis factor in a dose-dependent manner at both messenger ribonucleic acid and protein levels. LBP was given orally in a clinical study on cancer patients together with lymphokine-activated killer cells and IL-2. Compared to therapy without the lycium polysaccharides, this treatment caused a considerable cancer regression. Peng, Huang, and colleagues revealed the pure glycoconjugate LbGp4's strong immunoactivity. Tritium thymidine incorporation tests, flow cytometry, and electrophoretic mobility assays were all used to examine the process. In mice, the glycan chain of the glycoconjugate LbGp4 and its effects on splenocyte proliferation

were greater than those of the glycoconjugate. Zhang et al. demonstrated the beneficial effects of an ill-defined "polysaccharide-protein complex" by reducing proliferation and enhancing apoptosis in the liver cancer-related human hepatoma cell line QGY. Most recently, researchers looked examined how an LBP affected the development of human prostate cancer PC-3 cells. Findings showed that LBP may limit PC-3 cell proliferation and cause apoptosis. In PC-3 cells, LBP caused DNA strand breaks and a decline in the Bcl-2/Bax protein ratio. The tumor suppressor protein p induces the production of Bax, and Bax has been implicated in p-mediated apoptosis.

While few of them have been carried out using a pure glycoconjugate fraction, evidence for the antioxidative capacity of lycium polysaccharides has been established in various publications based on in vitro and several in vivo experiments. Li, Peng, and Wang used in vitro techniques such as the -carotene linoleate model, superoxide radical-scavenging activity, reducing power, and prevention of mice erythrocyte hemolysis caused by peroxyl radicals to assess the antioxidative ability of LBP. They came to the conclusion that the findings amply demonstrated LBPs' antioxidative strength. Studies on rats and mice have shown that LBP can reduce oxidative stress and DNA damage, inhibit lipid oxidation brought on by free radicals in a high-fat diet, and guard against oxidative damage in skeletal muscle brought on by strenuous exercise. According to Zhao et al., LbGp5 may have skin-protective effects because it helps human fibroblasts cultivated in less-than-ideal circumstances survive. LBP is also said to have antifatigue and cholesterol-lowering properties [9].

Many strong antioxidants that are not polysaccharides, like zeaxanthin and polyphenols, must be kept in mind since wolfberry is abundant in both of these substances. During the extraction of LBP, the phenolic derivatives in particular are expected to interact with and bind to the proteins and polysaccharides. They may then copurify with the LBPs during alcohol precipitation, similar to how tea polysaccharides of an AGP type do. There is a strong chance that low-molecular phenolic contaminants are responsible for some of the antioxidant benefits of wolfberry polysaccharides. In conclusion, polysaccharide extracts from L. barbarum L. fruit exhibit a wide range of bioactive properties, many of which are attributed to the presence of AGPs or glycoconjugates. However, it should be noted that antioxidant activity may be caused by the contamination of polysaccharide fractions with phenolic compounds. A number of the qualities that have been reported for AGPs and AGs from other plant sources seem to apply to polysaccharides from wolfberries. It is yet to be shown if LBPs provide additional advantages or have stronger bioactivity than AGPs from other plants. The precise function of glycoconjugates and the other polysaccharides in these advantages will be made clear by ongoing research to improve the separation and purity of the many polysaccharide types of L. barbarum.

Wolfberry Bioactives and Processing Impacts Are Bioavailable

Wolfberries are a rich source of bioactives that could work in concert. The technique of extraction and inclusion into a product is expected to have an impact on the bioavailability and nutritional qualities of wolfberry and its derivatives since the fruit includes both watersoluble and fat-soluble bioactives. In TCM, hot water extraction is a common procedure. For extracting hydrophilic chemicals from wolfberry, hot water is used, but the majority of the lipophilic compounds, including zeaxanthin dipalmitates, lipophilic vitamins, and other lipids, are lost. Food is a crucial distribution method. It is well known that eating a diet high in fruits and vegetables is good for your health. Nevertheless, drinking concentrated phytonutrient extracts or vitamin supplements may not be able to duplicate the health advantages of eating fruits and vegetables. Research shows that these phytonutrients work together in complementary and/or synergistic ways to promote health and create protective effects against illness, and that taking

a phytonutrient alone is less advantageous for human nutrition than consuming it as part of a complete diet. The customer of today expects to get the advantages of these phytonutrients in effective, practical, and all-natural formulations. Thus, a new strategy must maintain the integrity of the bioactive raw materials from natural bioactives to delicious meals. To put it another way, it must be feasible to offer all of a fruit's or vegetables inherent advantages in their raw, stable, and bioavailable form, including those of TCM herbs. To live up to this expectation, new approaches to delivering plant extracts' health benefits are required. These include choosing the best extraction method, examining the chemical stability and bioavailability of the extracts, and confirming any potential interactions with the particular food matrix.

Bioavailability of Wolfberry Zeaxanthin

The center macula of the human retina has a high concentration of zeaxanthin. It was hypothesized that wolfberry eating would have a favorable impact on health due to its high zeaxanthin content and anticipated advantages for vision. In one of the first experiments to test this theory, rhesus monkeys were given a diet containing 2.2 mg of zeaxanthin per day, a carotenoid component isolated from wolfberry fruit. As compared to monkeys given a control diet devoid of carotenoids, the authors of this research found that these monkeys had higher blood levels and macular densities of zeaxanthin. Zeaxanthin and lutein tissue and serum levels were investigated. Zeaxanthin levels in the blood and macular density were shown to be higher after receiving wolfberry extracts. Many human intervention studies that indicated zeaxanthin absorption were conducted in response to this discovery. In the first human intervention trial, Breithaupt et al. compared the absorption of natural zeaxanthin to that of a fat-soluble fraction of wolfberries. Both zeaxanthin supplements caused a rise in blood plasma levels, with a peak between 9 and hours after consumption. The zeaxanthin from wolfberries was better absorbed than that from synthetic nonesterified zeaxanthin, even though the findings were not statistically significant and the absorption of the wolfberry sample was very variable. In a -day supplementation research, Cheng et al. discovered that consuming of wolfberry every day significantly raised plasma levels of zeaxanthin. According to research by Hartmann et al., supplementing with mg of synthetic zeaxanthin caused a -fold rise in zeaxanthin plasma concentrations.

Immunomodulating Activity

For many years, wolfberry has been cherished in China for its ability to strengthen the immune system. Nevertheless, there is little international scientific literature on the effects of wolfberry consumption and the processes through which it is thought to have its purported immunological advantage. Wolfberry's polysaccharide component is mostly responsible for the published findings concerning its immunomodulation effects, which come from animal, ex vivo, and in vitro investigations. Yet, it is possible that substances included in wolfberries, such as antioxidants and vitamins, are also involved in immunomodulation. Because of the large proportion of polyunsaturated fatty acids in their plasma membranes, immune cells are known to be especially vulnerable to oxidative stress. As a result, wolfberries may strengthen the immune system by, for instance, including zeaxanthin, a strong lipophilic antioxidant.

Few human investigations on wolfberry immunomodulation exist. A subcutaneous injection of wolfberry juice increased the number of T cells and the pace of T cell maturation in a mouse model, as well as the size of the thymus and the spleen. Compared to mice treated with a saline control, healthy mice given an intraperitoneal injection of wolfberry juice together with blueberry and raspberry juices had an increase in spleen size and in the number of splenic macrophages. As macrophages are the primary phagocytic cells in the spleen, which serve as

a crucial defense by filtering infectious pathogens from the circulation, an increase in the number of splenic macrophages in a healthy animal would imply an enhanced capacity to combat illness. Notably, however, there was no reaction to the infusion of pure wolfberry juice.

Wolfberry's Cardiovascular Benefits

Several studies conducted over the last years have shown that wolfberry or its extracts may protect the heart. The therapeutic potential for the cardiovascular benefit of wolfberry, as observed for in vitro and in vivo experimental settings, may be attributed to effects on oxidative stress, among other pathways. Those outcomes are probably connected to wolfberry's regulation of NO pathways that are reliant on endothelial cells as well as neurons. The traditional endothelial-dependent route of the NO system, in particular, is one of the most crucial processes for preserving the structural and functional integrity of the heart and vasculature. Blood pressure increase, thrombosis, and atherosclerosis are some of the physiological and pathological effects of the system being inhibited, particularly by endogenous NOS inhibitors and reactive oxygen species. The conversion of the NOS amino acid substrate L-arginine to L-citrulline by neuronal and endothelial NOSs results in the constitutive production of NO. One putative hypothesis is that centrally, neuronal NO produced in the cardiovascular control center of the autonomic nervous system participates in a signal transduction pathway that tonically inhibits sympathetic outflow produced from the rostral brainstem, resulting in reduced adrenergic tone in the heart and arteries. During the past two decades, it has been proven that the primary processes in modifying vascular function are endothelial-dependent NO generation and its vascular dilatory effect in the nearby vascular smooth muscle cells.

According to Gross, Zhang, and Zhang, wolfberry contains L-arginine, a substrate for NOS. More significantly, and as mentioned in Section .3.3, wolfberries are abundant in zeaxanthin, which is a powerful antioxidant, as well as 2-O- ascorbic acid, a precursor to ascorbic acid that is very stable and detectable in the bloodstream of both arteries and portal veins after oral administration. Zeaxanthin and the precursor of vitamin C both scavenge and neutralize ROS. Wolfberry is also said to raise blood levels of glutathione peroxidase and the antioxidant enzyme SOD. Together, these substances may reduce sympathetic discharge to the peripheral organs and directly improve the synthesis and bioavailability of constitutive NO in the cardiovascular system. Enhancing the activity of the NO pathway or raising NO bioavailability is a way to promote cardiovascular health or lower cardiovascular risk because NO deficiency is connected to the pathogenesis of diseases like hypertension and atherosclerosis. Independent adults between the ages of and who consumed grams of wolfberry fruit per day for days showed significantly higher levels of blood SOD and hemoglobin, as well as a % reduction in lipid peroxides in one of the few human studies on wolfberries.

WOLFBERRY INCREASES SEXUAL FUNCTION

There is some scientific support for the traditional usage of wolfberries to improve sexual function. LBP prevented lipid peroxidation brought on by ultraviolet light in cultured seminiferous epithelium. This could point to LBP's antioxidant properties, although UV exposure is not a known direct cause of decreased sex function or fertility. Because that seminiferous epithelium is very sensitive to heat, hyperthermia is a significant risk factor in this regard. It is interesting to note that LBP significantly reduced the structural and functional damage caused by hyperthermia in vivo. Moreover, wolfberry-derived polysaccharides prevented DNA oxidative damage and free radical-induced cytochrome c decrease in seminiferous epithelial cells. The impact of LBP on heat-induced functional and structural damage to the testis was replicated in in vivo tests. Additionally, LBP enhanced copulatory

performance and reproductive function in rats who had undergone unilateral castration, including shortened penis erection latency and mount latency, elevated levels of sexual hormones, increased accessory sexual organ weights, and enhanced quantity and quality of sperm.

Regarding the mechanism, wolfberry's enhancement of sexual function is mostly related to how it influences the NO-cGMP axis by increasing the substrate for NO production and scavenging ROS. In a separate study, a herbal supplement containing wolfberry seeds increased male rats' penile tissues' NO-cGMP activity and intracavernous pressure. As a result, the mechanism of improved sexual function differs from that of other erectile dysfunction medications like sidlenafil, which are strong and focused inhibitors of cGMP-specific phosphodiesterase [10].

CONCLUSION

The wolfberry fruit has a fascinating past and a favorable reputation in Chinese culture and medicine. According to contemporary science, its health benefits which the Chinese have long known about—are actually the result of the presence and admixture of several biologically active molecules. The first is the well-researched LBP, a family of intricate arabinogalactan proteins. Our understanding shows that the biological importance of LBP may be restricted since there is skepticism that the discovered structure and content of wolfberry LBPs are considerably different from those known from other plants. The potential advantages and effectiveness of LBPs have yet to be shown in human studies because to the complexity of LBP production and analysis. Recent research has focused on the unique vitamin C precursor 2-O-ascorbic acid as well as the carotenoid zeaxanthin, which is a crucial part of the human macula. Its potential benefits are only partly understood, and further information about their actual advantages and mechanism of action will only emerge through long-term supplementation studies with precise, measurable results. We were able to create a new formulation of wolfberry fruit by using a holistic strategy, similar to that used in TCM, and the emulsifying properties of skim milk. This allowed us to combine all of the bioactives from wolfberry for the first time in one preparation, not just the water-soluble ones, but also the equally significant fat-soluble ones, like zeaxanthin.

REFERENCES:

[1] J. Ni, C. Ding, Y. Zhang, Z. Song, X. Hu, and T. Hao, “Electrohydrodynamic drying of Chinese wolfberry in a multiple needle-to-plate electrode system,” *Foods*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/foods8050152.

[2] M. Yang and C. Ding, “Electrohydrodynamic (EHD) drying of the Chinese wolfberry fruits,” *Springerplus*, 2016, doi: 10.1186/s40064-016-2546-1.

[3] Y. Zhao *et al.*, “Effects of polysaccharides from bee collected pollen of Chinese wolfberry on immune response and gut microbiota composition in cyclophosphamide-treated mice,” *J. Funct. Foods*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.jff.2020.104057.

[4] J. Ni, C. Ding, Y. Zhang, Z. Song, X. Hu, and T. Hao, “Effect of electrohydrodynamic partially combined with oven drying on Chinese wolfberry,” *Int. J. Appl. Electromagn. Mech.*, 2020, doi: 10.3233/JAE-190066.

[5] J. Qi *et al.*, “Insights into the improvement of bioactive phytochemicals, antioxidant activities and flavor profiles in Chinese wolfberry juice by select lactic acid bacteria,” *Food Biosci.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.fbio.2021.101264.

[6] Z. Hu, S. Zhang, W. Chu, W. He, C. Yu, and H. Yu, "Numerical analysis and preliminary experiment of a solar assisted heat pump drying system for chinese wolfberry," *Energies*, 2020, doi: 10.3390/en13174306.

[7] Y. Chen, J. Zhao, G. Hu, and J. Chen, "Design and testing of a pneumatic oscillating chinese wolfberry harvester," *Horticulturae*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/horticulturae7080214.

[8] F. Chen *et al.*, "Isolation, characterization and antitumor effect on du145 cells of a main polysaccharide in pollen of Chinese wolfberry," *Molecules*, 2018, doi: 10.3390/molecules23102430.

[9] W. Yin, C. Zhang, H. Zhu, Y. Zhao, and Y. He, "Application of near-infrared hyperspectral imaging to discriminate different geographical origins of Chinese wolfberries," *PLoS One*, 2017, doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0180534.

[10] Y. Zhou, X. Gao, J. Wang, B. H. Robinson, and X. Zhao, "Water-use patterns of Chinese wolfberry (Lycium barbarum L.) on the Tibetan Plateau," *Agric. Water Manag.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.agwat.2021.107010.

CHAPTER 18

A BRIEF DISCUSSION ON NEURODEGENERATION AND BOTANICAL PHENOLIC

Phool Chandra, Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- chandraphool@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

The central nervous system cells are especially susceptible to oxidative stress due to the high demand for molecular oxygen, concentration of polyunsaturated fatty acids in membrane phospholipids, and the comparatively low quantity of antioxidant defense enzymes. One common underlying component for the pathogenesis of a variety of neurodegenerative disorders, including Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and stroke, has been linked as excessive reactive oxygen species generation in the brain. While ROS are produced normally by both enzymatic and nonenzymatic processes in the mitochondria and cytoplasm, excessive production under pathological circumstances is linked to the activation of Ca-dependent enzymes like proteases, phospholipases, and nucleases as well as changes in signaling pathways, all of which result in mitochondrial dysfunction, the release of inflammatory factors, and apoptosis.

KEYWORDS:

Biomolecular, Curcumin, Chinese Medicine, Human Health, Oxygen Species.

INTRODUCTION

There is a ton of data showing that both healthy and sick cells create various reactive oxygen species, such as superoxide, hydrogen peroxide, and hydroxyl and peroxyl radicals. DNA, proteins, and lipids are consequently oxidatively damaged when the rate of ROS formation surpasses the capability of antioxidant defense. Oxidative stress is connected to pathways that cause neuronal cell damage in the central nervous system in a number of clinical conditions. Reactive nitrogen species, which include nitric oxide and its congeners like peroxynitrite and nitroxyl anion, cause cellular damage that is referred to as "nitrosative stress" in recent times. Many neurodegenerative diseases, including as Alzheimer's disease , Parkinson's disease , Huntington's disease , amyotrophic lateral sclerosis , and stroke, are thought to be influenced by both oxidative and nitrosative stressors.

Since it uses a lot of oxygen for energy and has relatively few antioxidant defense enzymes, the brain is especially susceptible to oxidative damage, especially as we age. Moreover, excessively large amounts of polyunsaturated fatty acids are present in the membranes of brain cells. Among the numerous kinds of cells in the brain, neurons are more prone to assaults by toxic substances, and are sensitive to damage by ischemia/stroke, seizure, and other excitotoxic injuries. Lipid peroxidation, which causes oxidative damage to lipids, is linked to a gradual loss of membrane integrity, a decrease in mitochondrial membrane potential, and an increase in plasma membrane permeability to Ca^{2+}. Proteins that have been damaged by oxidation produce derivatives that are carbonylated and nitrosylated. Furthermore, nuclear condensation and altered gene expression are consequences of ROS damage to DNA. Oxidative stress is a significant risk factor for neurodegeneration as a result. An enormous amount of work has been put into creating new methods to combat various brain injuries in recent years. Polyphenolic chemicals, which are abundant in many fruits, vegetables, cereals, roots, flowers, and seeds,

have positive [1] benefits in preventing oxidative stress-related illnesses including cancer, cardiovascular disease, and neurological disorders. There is widespread agreement that these chemicals have antioxidant and anti-inflammatory characteristics and can chelate metal ions, even if the processes by which they exert therapeutic effects are not fully known. Recent research has also shown that certain substances may have unique biochemical impacts beyond their antioxidant and radical-scavenging capabilities, such as altering the activity of "vitagene" system components including thioredoxin, heat shock protein, and sirtuins. The development and course of neurodegenerative illnesses as well as aging may be impacted by these impacts. Understanding how polyphenols affect metabolism and signaling has opened the door to creative nutritional therapies. The four plant phenolic substances resveratrol from grapes, curcumin from turmeric, apocynin from Picrorhiza kurroa, and epigallocatechin - gallate from green tea are the topics of our review in this chapter of current investigations [2].

Curcumin

Turmeric, the powdered rhizome of the herb Curcuma longa Linn which is often used as a spice in Southeast Asian and Middle Eastern cuisine, is the source of curcumin . Turmeric is believed to have a wide range of therapeutic uses; it is used as an antibacterial agent as well as an antiseptic for wounds, burns, and bruises. Curcumin is also used to treat various illnesses including gastrointestinal issues in Asian nations. Curcumin has been shown to bind amyloid directly and prevent a aggregation as well as fibril and oligomer formation in vivo. It was discovered that curcumin prevented the growth and extension of a fibrils and weakened fibrilized A. Studies that are well planned are desperately needed to determine if dietary curcumin is effective in treating AD. Ibuprofen, curcumin, and traditional nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs were evaluated in a Tg mouse research for their capacity to shield mice against A-induced harm. Ibuprofen didn't have the same effects on oxidative damage and synaptophysin loss as dietary curcumin [3].

DISCUSSION

Alzheimer's disease Parkinson's disease is a degenerative, chronic condition that affects motor coordination, speech, and other abilities. The condition is named after an English doctor by the name of James Parkinson, who in his paper and Paper on the Shaking Palsy provided a thorough account of the illness. Muscle stiffness, resting tremor, movement slowness, and, in severe instances, a virtually total lack of movement are all symptoms of this pathological condition of movement disorders. Cognitive impairment, mild linguistic issues, and sadness are examples of secondary symptoms. The loss of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra is the source of these symptoms. In those over, Parkinson's disease affects around 1% of the population. The cause of PD is still unknown despite several theories and ongoing conjecture.

The quest for other neurotoxins as a potential cause of PD has been spurred by the identification of 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1, 2, 3, 6-tetrahydropyridine, an environmental toxin that may specifically harm the substantia nigra and produce Parkinsonian symptoms in both animals and humans . Although a number of studies have used the MPTP model for studying degeneration of dopamine neurons and related pathophysiology of PD, other environmental toxins such as manganese, dimethoxyphenyl-ethylamine, and paraquat have also been found to kill DA neurons. These investigations provide evidence that the degeneration of dopaminergic neurons in PD is caused by oxidative damage, mitochondrial dysfunction, proteasomal dysfunction, and inflammation. Monoamine oxidase or auto-oxidation, which produces superoxide, hydrogen peroxide, and hydroxyl radicals, is used to break down dopamine. These oxidative processes are thought to be the root causes of the harm done to dopaminergic neurons.

NO may potentially contribute to the etiology of PD. It may be produced by excitotoxic shocks or released by inflammation-induced microglia. In PD, the combined generation of ROS and RNS is a significant factor in DA neuron destruction. L-dopa, a substance that may be converted to DA in dopaminergic neurons via L-aromatic amino acid decarboxylase, is the most often used therapy for PD. Just 1% to 5% of L-dopa can, however, reach the dopaminergic neurons. The residual L-dopa may be converted to DA in other locations and has a range of negative side effects.

Dopa decarboxylase inhibitors include carbidopa and benserazide. These chemicals serve to inhibit the metabolism of L-dopa before it reaches the dopaminergic neurons and are often administered in tandem with L-dopa. Bromocriptine, ropinirole, cabergoline, pergolide, pramipexole, apomorphine, and lisuride are examples of DA agonists that typically cause side effects such somnolence, hallucinations, and/or sleeplessness yet are only moderately effective. Agonists for dopamine could work by activating DA receptors. The symptoms may ultimately worsen, though, since these substances may gradually make the DA receptors less responsive. By blocking MAO-B and preventing the breakdown of DA in dopaminergic neurons, the MAO-B inhibitors selegiline and rasagiline might considerably lessen the symptoms. Levoamphetamine and levomethamphetamine are two adrenergic medications that are selegiline's metabolites and have negative side effects [4].

Stroke

Stroke, the third-leading cause of mortality and the top cause of long-term impairment in aging individuals, is the quickly progressing loss of brain functions brought on by disturbances in blood flow to the brain. Stroke may result from hemorrhages brought on by blood vessel damage or ischemia brought on by thrombosis or embolism. Because to the incapacity of the damaged part of the brain to operate, it is impossible to move, comprehend, or speak. A thrombus blocking an artery in the brain results in an ischemic stroke. The goal of definitive treatment is to dissolve the clot with thrombolysis or to physically remove it by a thrombectomy. Thrombolytic medications are sometimes used to treat stroke. In high-risk individuals, oral anticoagulants like warfarin are the basis of stroke prevention. After a stroke or TIA, aspirin and antiplatelet medications are useful in secondary prevention. A thrombolytic medication called tissue plasminogen activator is used to break the clot and open the blocked artery. The use of tPA is restricted to 3 hours after the start of a stroke, however. Anticoagulants and antithrombotics may sometimes make intracerebral hemorrhage symptoms worse in individuals. There are few medications or pharmacological therapies that may effectively treat hemorrhagic stroke. Managing hypertension and diet, engaging in regular exercise, and giving up smoking and alcohol consumption are all stroke preventive techniques. Many animal models have been created in which blood flow is focally or globally, temporarily or permanently, or totally or incompletely blocked in order to explore the pathoetiology and potential prevention of stroke. As it mimics the most common kind of clinical stroke, the middle cerebral artery is often blocked to generate focal cerebral ischemia in animals [5].

Botanical Phenolics' Integrated Signaling Mechanisms in Neurodegenerative Disorders

Many discovered plant-derived chemicals and plant extracts have been proven to be effective in the treatment and prevention of neurodegenerative diseases. Unfortunately, little is known about their underlying molecular processes or therapeutic potential [6], [7]. The study of these natural chemicals' potential health benefits presents formidable obstacles for contemporary medicine. Depending on the quantity of hydroxyl groups and benzene ring derivatives, polyphenols are categorized into several classes. The largest and most significant class of polyphenols are flavonoids, which can be further broken down into subclasses like flavones,

flavonols, flavanons, flavons, isoflavonoids, and anthocyanin. Certain flavonoids may vary in their antioxidant and ROS-scavenging abilities depending on their molecular make-up, the locations of their hydroxyl groups, and whether or not they include conjugated dienes [8]–[10].

CONCLUSION

Apoptosis, oxidative stress, inflammatory responses, and other pathophysiological processes are only a few of the many and intricate factors that make up the pathophysiology of neurodegenerative illnesses. Finding successful therapies may be challenging due to the intricacy of cell signaling networks. Even though the pathophysiology of AD has been better understood, present therapy strategies only focus on symptoms. With the help of the Internet, you may get a wide range of information on the topic of e-commerce. Flavonoid polyphenols ameliorate age-related cognitive decline and are neuroprotective in models of PD, AD, and cerebral I/R injuries, according to both experimental and epidemiological studies. Several plant polyphenols have been proposed as promising therapeutic agents for the development of neurodegenerative disorders. There is growing interest in utilizing resveratrol specifically to treat progressive neurodegenerative diseases including AD and PD. It is known that certain botanical substances may operate globally on numerous routes while others may act selectively on a particular pathway.

REFERENCES:

[1] G. C. Brown, “The endotoxin hypothesis of neurodegeneration,” *Journal of neuroinflammation*. 2019. doi: 10.1186/s12974-019-1564-7.

[2] H. Mathys *et al.*, “Temporal Tracking of Microglia Activation in Neurodegeneration at Single-Cell Resolution,” *Cell Rep.*, 2017, doi: 10.1016/j.celrep.2017.09.039.

[3] S. Guerreiro, A. L. Privat, L. Bressac, and D. Toulorge, “CD38 in Neurodegeneration and Neuroinflammation,” *Cells*. 2020. doi: 10.3390/cells9020471.

[4] C. A. Butler, A. S. Popescu, E. J. A. Kitchener, D. H. Allendorf, M. Puigdellívol, and G. C. Brown, “Microglial phagocytosis of neurons in neurodegeneration, and its regulation,” *Journal of Neurochemistry*. 2021. doi: 10.1111/jnc.15327.

[5] F. Pessina *et al.*, “DNA Damage Triggers a New Phase in Neurodegeneration,” *Trends in Genetics*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.tig.2020.09.006.

[6] C. Peña-Bautista, E. Casas-Fernández, M. Vento, M. Baquero, and C. Cháfer-Pericás, “Stress and neurodegeneration,” *Clinica Chimica Acta*. 2020. doi: 10.1016/j.cca.2020.01.019.

[7] C. E. G. Leyns and D. M. Holtzman, “Glial contributions to neurodegeneration in tauopathies,” *Molecular Neurodegeneration*. 2017. doi: 10.1186/s13024-017-0192-x.

[8] C. R. A. Batista, G. F. Gomes, E. Candelario-Jalil, B. L. Fiebich, and A. C. P. de Oliveira, “Lipopolysaccharide-induced neuroinflammation as a bridge to understand neurodegeneration,” *International Journal of Molecular Sciences*. 2019. doi: 10.3390/ijms20092293.

[9] F. M. Menzies *et al.*, “Autophagy and Neurodegeneration: Pathogenic Mechanisms and Therapeutic Opportunities,” *Neuron*. 2017. doi: 10.1016/j.neuron.2017.01.022.

[10] A. Ndayisaba, C. Kaindlstorfer, and G. K. Wenning, “Iron in neurodegeneration - Cause or consequence?,” *Frontiers in Neuroscience*. 2019. doi: 10.3389/fnins.2019.00180.

CHAPTER 19

HERBAL MEDICATION FOR THE TREATMENT OF CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE

Krishana Kumar Sharma, Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- drkk108@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

From the dawn of civilization, herbs have been employed as therapeutic agents, and several of their derivatives have established themselves as cornerstones of modern pharmacology. Patients with congestive heart failure, atherosclerosis, venous insufficiency, cerebral insufficiency, and arrhythmia have all benefited from herbal therapy for cardiovascular illnesses. Nevertheless, many of the herbal medicines now in use have not received thorough scientific evaluation, and some might have substantial adverse consequences and significant medication interactions. Clinicians should ask about these health practices for cardiac illness given the large frequency of herbal usage in the United States today and be aware of the possible benefits and risks.

KEYWORDS:

Carotenoids, Heart Disease, Herbal Remedies, Human Health, Micronutrients.

INTRODUCTION

For the last several decades, the leading cause of morbidity and death in industrialized nations has been the cardiovascular diseases discussed in this chapter, and emerging countries are quickly catching up with this pandemic. Atheromatous vascular disease is the underlying pathology that causes coronary artery disease, cerebrovascular disease, peripheral vascular disease, and the emergence of heart failure and cardiac arrhythmias. High levels of low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, smoking, hypertension, diabetes, abdominal obesity, psychosocial factors, insufficient intake of fruits and vegetables, excessive alcohol consumption, and a lack of regular physical activity are the main risk factors for these disorders. These factors have been recognized for a long time. The conventional risk factors were confirmed to be responsible for over % of the population's attributable risk for myocardial infarction in the INTERHEART study, despite ongoing research to better define a person's cardiovascular risk with respect to genetic factors, more complex lipid traits, and inflammatory markers.

There is strong evidence that medications used to address traditional risk factors may lower the incidence of cardiovascular events. According to numerous large clinical trials using statins, lowering LDL cholesterol with these medications lowers coronary and cerebrovascular events. Additionally, the target for LDL cholesterol decreases with each new set of guidelines and the availability of more potent medications. Similar advantages have been linked to more successful hypertension management with a variety of antihypertensive medication classes, although some recent research suggests that we may have reached the ideal blood pressure level in certain patient categories [1]. There is increasing understanding of the function of dietary variables and herbal medicines in the prevention of CVD and the potential of their use in therapy, in addition to the treatment of cardiovascular risk factors with pharmacological agents and the use of antithrombotic pharmaceuticals. The usage of antioxidant vitamins and the antioxidant characteristics of herbal materials are the main topics of interest, while certain herbal materials may also reduce common cardiovascular risk factors or have antithrombotic

qualities. The usage of antioxidant vitamins and other crucial micronutrients is the first thing we discuss in this chapter before concentrating mostly on the findings from big clinical trials and meta-analyses rather than from mechanistic investigations.

DISCUSSION

Cardiovascular Disease and Essential Micronutrients

Although though appropriate levels of these nutrients are recognized to be required for the maintenance of health, the use of supplements of these essential micronutrients in conventional medical practice is still debatable. Although it has long been established that vitamin D, ascorbic acid, and vitamin B are essential for treating rickets, scurvy, and pernicious anemia, respectively, it is less well known that these and other essential nutrients can also cause subclinical deficiency states that can go unnoticed in chronic illnesses like CVDs. Throughout time, the estimated average requirement to avoid deficient situations for typical EMNs has been developed and altered. Age- and sex-specific Department of Health of the United Kingdom recommendations. Nonetheless, the use of these or other EMNs at "supraphysiological" or pharmaceutical levels for CVD remains debatable and has the potential to be hazardous. With the probable exceptions of folic acid, niacin, and magnesium, the usefulness of pharmaceutical dosages for the majority of EMNs is debatable, albeit care must be given while using them. The administration of the right supplement results in the therapeutically intended outcome for the treatment or prevention of the illness only when a deficient condition is present [2], [3].

Moreover, certain patient groups can have unique requirements for EMNs. For instance, diabetics, elderly people, and smokers may all need higher than usual amounts of vitamin C. However, even if the diet provides the ideal EMN, an individual's requirements could not be satisfied because of inadequate absorption, a dysfunctional metabolism, or related deficiencies and illness conditions. Supplementation should often only be given while the body is replenishing its stockpiles, but sometimes it may be necessary to sustain the dose. Restoration of one EMN may result in increased absorption of another or, in certain situations, may reveal a partial deficit. For the sake of scientific purity, the substance under study is frequently administered alone during clinical trials when evaluating an EMN; however, since deficiencies of one EMN are frequently accompanied by others, administering a high dose of a single EMN can lead to unnatural, potentially dangerous situations.

A vitamin this category includes various similar fat-soluble substances originating from animal tissue, such as retinal and retinoic acid, as well as the vegetable pigment -carotene, which is linked to the vitamin A molecule. These compounds have the potential to guard against inflammatory illness and atherosclerosis due to their antioxidant activity as quenchers of reactive oxygen species. Clinical investigations using -carotene, however, did not demonstrate any appreciable effectiveness in the prevention of CVD [4].

Fresh fruits and vegetables include a variety of natural carotenoids, some of which have been intensively researched for their potential to protect coronary heart disease. The main source of -carotene is carrots. Early observational studies indicated a link between a high dietary intake of -carotene and a reduced incidence of CVD; elevated blood -carotene levels were related with a decreased risk of cancer and were shown to reduce overall mortality rates. Nevertheless, the Medical Research Council/British Heart Foundation Heart Protection Study found no benefit for high-risk adults using mg of -carotene daily together with 0 mg of vitamin E and 0 mg of vitamin C. Similarly, the Women's Antioxidant Cardiovascular Study reported no CVD risk reduction in high-risk women taking mg of -carotene every other day, 0 mg of ascorbic acid daily, or 0 IU of vitamin E every other day. In the Physicians' Health Study, the evaluation of the relationship between vegetable intake and CHD risk found that eating vegetables high in

carotenoids was associated with a lower risk of CHD , but after years of follow-up, supplementation with -carotene mg on alternate days had no effect on CVD, cancer, or overall mortality among primarily nonsmokers [5].

Lycopene

With double the antioxidant activity of -carotene, lycopene is an oxygenated carotenoid. The greatest source of lycopene, which is being studied as a potential precursor to vitamin A, is tomatoes. While certain epidemiological studies and supplemental clinical trials show a reduction in CVD risk , controlled clinical investigations with lycopene and well-defined subject groups recently undertaken did not uncover any conclusive evidence for CVD prevention . The effect of lycopene in the prevention and treatment of prostate cancer is the subject of more recent studies.

B vitamins

These EMNs are easily eliminated since they are water soluble. Depletion may develop as a consequence of the use of high-dose diuretics in the treatment of congestive heart failure. Patients with refractory CHF who are resistant to diuretics are advised to take thiamine supplements, although its usefulness in heart failure that isn't caused by a documented thiamine deficit is still debatable. Thiamine supplementation may help avoid the cardiomyopathy that is sometimes associated with diabetes. High-dose thiamine has been shown to be able to prevent diabetic cardiomyopathy in a research using the streptozotocin-induced diabetic rat model.

C vitamin

It is yet unknown how vitamin C supplementation affects CVD. It is believed that vitamin C's antioxidant qualities work in concert with vitamin E's to prevent lipid peroxidation and reduce the production of peroxyl radicals. By increasing the amount of accessible nitric oxide, vitamin C also affects the function of endothelial vasodilators in heart failure. Nevertheless, large dosages of vitamin C have also been linked to lower levels of NO synthesis by endothelial cells.

According to one scientific experiment, vitamin C decreased the development of atherosclerosis in both men and women over the age. Low levels of vitamin C have been identified in the blood of the elderly and other demographic groups, such as men, smokers, diabetics, and hypertensives, who are at higher risk of CHD. Vitamin C levels in women using oral estrogen contraception may also be below average. A British study discovered that vitamin C blood levels at entry were inversely related to death during extended follow-up from all causes, including ischemic heart disease in both sexes. The Nurse's Health Study found that vitamin C supplements were linked to a lower risk of CHD in women [6].

E vitamin

Studies on tocopherols, the main lipid-soluble antioxidants present in tissue and plasma, have been extensive. Unsaturated fatty acid oxidation in LDL ppapers is well acknowledged as a crucial component of atherogenesis. Vitamin E prevents the LDL ppaper's lipid peroxidation chain process. Supplements have been shown to reduce lipid peroxidation by up to %. Potential mechanisms of cardioprotection with vitamin E include stabilizing plaque, lowering inflammation, platelet aggregation, expression of adhesion molecules on the artery wall, and promoting vasodilation. MI and thrombotic stroke are thought to be prevented by vitamin E's anti-inflammatory and anticoagulant effects.

Flavonoids

The traditional French diet is high in saturated fats, but the prevalence of CAD is lower in France than it is in the United States. The so-called French paradox is this. Fresh fruit and vegetables are a frequent part of the normal French diet. They have phytonutrients that could reduce peroxidative tendencies and slow atherogenesis and thrombosis. Red wine consumption could also be a contributing factor. Little doses of ethanol could help prevent cardiovascular or cerebral illness. Gin and cava, albeit to a lesser degree, have both been proven to reduce the inflammatory markers of atherosclerosis in healthy males. Red wine have become attractive options for potential cancer and CVD prevention due to their high polyphenol content. Two glasses of red wine before a meal boost blood antioxidant activity for at least four hours, according to research on the antioxidant activity of red wine in volunteers. Via a flavonoid-polyphenol action, red wine boosts antioxidant activity. In a short research conducted in the Netherlands, the usage of quercetin, phenolic acids, and dietary bioflavonoids was examined. During a period of five years, there was a reduction in the frequency of heart attacks and sudden deaths in correlation with increasing dietary intake of the tertiles of flavonoids. The foods most suited for study were those high in quercetin, such as black tea, apples, and onions, which also contain quantities of polyphenols comparable to those in red grapes. Short- and long-term use of black tea was observed to correct endothelial vasomotor dysfunction but not to diminish ex vivo platelet aggregation in patients with CHD. Grape skin and seeds contain resveratrol, which stimulates platelet NO synthase and prevents the generation of reactive oxygen species and platelet activation. This might explain why moderate wine consumption prevents ischemic cardiovascular disease. Recently, resveratrol's possible health benefits were studied. The antiaging properties of resveratrol, induction of various longevity genes, and prevention of aging-related deterioration in cardiovascular function have been hypothesized, although this has not been shown in intervention studies [7].

After being overlooked for a while during the age of significant pharmacological and therapeutic advancements, the fundamental significance of a well-balanced diet that contains a sufficient amount of fruit and vegetables has been rediscovered. For the preservation of excellent health during times of plenty, it's crucial to limit calorie intake, cut down on animal fats, and avoid alcohol use while still engaging in enough regular physical activity and mental enjoyment. The global burden of infectious illnesses is being replaced by an epidemic of chronic diseases including obesity, diabetes, and the ensuing cardiovascular diseases. If these are inadequate, it is clear that the use of EMNs is appropriate, although their effectiveness in managing chronic CVDs is often unproven. While herbal treatments have a long history of usage in conventional medicine and have potential biological effects, they have not yet been clinically proven and are often not yet sufficiently standardized to be advised as therapy. More study is expected to result in a change in this condition. [8] While there is not currently sufficient evidence from clinical studies to support the use of these complementary treatments, tradition and practice indicate that they will likely continue to be used for a variety of purposes, including the prevention or treatment of CVDs [9], [10].

CONCLUSION

The majority of the herbal remedies included here do, overall, seem to have pharmacological actions in vitro and in animal studies that may have an impact on CVD. Yet, the data from ethically sound clinical studies are often inadequate to make firm judgments. Before the genuine therapeutic benefit of these herbs can be determined, the issues with standardization of herbal formulations and the conduct of adequately controlled clinical studies to accept international standards need to be addressed.

REFERENCES:

[1] R. Liperoti, D. L. Vetrano, R. Bernabei, and G. Onder, "Herbal Medications in Cardiovascular Medicine," *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*. 2017. doi: 10.1016/j.jacc.2016.11.078.

[2] Y. Liu, M. Sun, H. Yao, Y. Liu, and R. Gao, "Herbal Medicine for the Treatment of Obesity: An Overview of Scientific Evidence from 2007 to 2017," *Evidence-based Complementary and Alternative Medicine*. 2017. doi: 10.1155/2017/8943059.

[3] X. Ji *et al.*, "Bioactive compounds from herbal medicines to manage dyslipidemia," *Biomedicine and Pharmacotherapy*. 2019. doi: 10.1016/j.biopha.2019.109338.

[4] S. S. Al Disi, M. A. Anwar, and A. H. Eid, "Anti-hypertensive herbs and their mechanisms of action: Part I," *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2016. doi: 10.3389/fphar.2015.00323.

[5] A. Tachjian, V. Maria, and A. Jahangir, "Use of Herbal Products and Potential Interactions in Patients With Cardiovascular Diseases," *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*. 2010. doi: 10.1016/j.jacc.2009.07.074.

[6] M. Hesari *et al.*, "Current advances in the use of nanophytomedicine therapies for human cardiovascular diseases," *International Journal of Nanomedicine*. 2021. doi: 10.2147/IJN.S295508.

[7] Y. Ma, X. Gong, Y. Mo, and S. Wu, "Polydatin inhibits the oxidative stress-induced proliferation of vascular smooth muscle cells by activating the eNOS/SIRT1 pathway," *Int. J. Mol. Med.*, 2016, doi: 10.3892/ijmm.2016.2554.

[8] G. Valli and E. G. V. Giardina, "Benefits, adverse effects and drug interactions of herbal therapies with cardiovascular effects," *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*. 2002. doi: 10.1016/S0735-1097(02)01749-7.

[9] G. A. Bray *et al.*, "The science of obesity management: An endocrine society scientific statement," *Endocr. Rev.*, 2018, doi: 10.1210/er.2017-00253.

[10] A. A. Izzo, S. Hoon-Kim, R. Radhakrishnan, and E. M. Williamson, "A Critical Approach to Evaluating Clinical Efficacy, Adverse Events and Drug Interactions of Herbal Remedies," *Phytotherapy Research*. 2016. doi: 10.1002/ptr.5591.

CHAPTER 20

USING HERBS AND SPICES TO TREAT AND PREVENT CANCER

Rajesh Kumar Sharma, Associate Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- rajeshsharma7529@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

Throughout history, spices have influenced a wide range of global events. In quest of priceless spices, many explorers, including the fabled Christopher Columbus, cruised the oceans. These precious ingredients are used in a broad range of cultures as colorants and preservatives in addition to adding tastes. Nowadays, spices are valued more and more for their possible health advantages as well as their culinary qualities. While the antioxidant characteristics of spices may be what give them their health benefits, it is also possible that they have biological effects due to their capacity to alter a variety of cellular functions, such as drug metabolism, cell division, apoptosis, differentiation, and immunocompetence.

KEYWORDS:

Cinnamon, Cancer, Herbal Medicine, Micronutrients, Rosemary.

INTRODUCTION

The criteria used to define what makes a culinary spice and how they vary from culinary herbs is where the difficulty of understanding the biological reaction to spices first emerges. In both scientific and non-technical literature, both phrases are often used interchangeably. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration defines a spice as a "aromatic vegetable substance, in the whole, broken, or ground form," whose significant function in food is "seasoning rather than nutrition" and from which "no portion of any volatile oil or other flavoring principle has been removed" . This definition is valid, however it ignores the biological effects of taking these substances and how they vary from plants. Spices are "flavorings that are dried and culinary herbs are fresh or dried leaves from plants that may be used for flavoring reasons in food preparation," according to the U.S. National Arboretum, which provides an alternate description. We must keep in mind that an item's significance is not determined by how much of it is eaten. So, it would look wrong to omit the health implications in any definition.

We refer to both "herbs" and "spices" interchangeably in this chapter and presume that both have qualities that go beyond just imparting taste and color. There is no question that diet and health are closely related. People have claimed for eons that food has advantages beyond just providing energy. Several of the earliest texts by humans include references to food's supposed healing powers. Let food be thy medicine and medicine be thy food, Hippocrates is reported to have stated. Epidemiological, preclinical, and clinical research continues to provide crucial insights into the complex interactions that exist between nutrients here defined as any element of food that has a physiological impact and health. Today, we continue to be fascinated by claims that foods, especially spices, might reduce the risk of illness or improve quality of life. To assess the effectiveness of spices in the treatment and prevention of cancer, three different kinds of biomarkers exposure, effect, and susceptibility are required [1]. To fully understand the health benefits of including spices in the diet, more research will be required on the dosages of particular spices needed to produce a response, as well as the interactions of spices with other dietary components, gastrointestinal microbes, environmental exposures, and human genetics.

DISCUSSION

Cinnamon

The bark of an evergreen tree in the Lauraceae family is used to make the spice cinnamon. Cinnamaldehyde, eugenol, terpinene, -pinene, carvacrol, linalool, safrole, benzyl benzoate, and coumarin are among the principal components of cinnamon. By using this site, you agree to our terms and conditions. Its antioxidant qualities have been the subject of several investigations. Oxidative stress was significantly reduced after days of feeding inbred male albino Wistar rats a high-fat diet with % cinnamon bark powder, as shown by a drop in TBARS, a biomarker of free radical generation. As compared to controls, giving rats cinnamon bark powder resulted in a considerable increase in numerous antioxidant-related enzymes, such as catalase, superoxide dismutase, and GST in both liver and heart tissue. In rats administered cinnamon bark powder, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase and GPx levels were similarly considerably elevated. These enzymes aid in preserving GSH levels, which are crucial for cellular integrity and defense against free radical-induced oxidative damage [2].

Coriander

The plant known as coriander, or Coriandrum sativum, is a member of the Apiaceae family and is indigenous to southern Europe, northern Africa, and southwestern Asia. Despite the fact that the plant's whole body is edible, fresh leaves and dried seeds are the components that are most commonly utilized in recipes. In the globe, coriander is often used as an ingredient in food. One of its primary ingredients is linalool. The ability of coriander seeds to support the hepatic antioxidant system has been shown in a number of animal experiments. Male Wistar rats were fed a % coriander seed diet for weeks, which reduced the potential of the organochlorine pesticide hexachlorocyclohexane to encourage lipid peroxidation. The metabolism of foreign compounds may be affected by coriander. Depending on the tissue studied, feeding Swiss mice a meal containing 0 mg of coriander seeds per gram led to GST induction varying from % to %. In a different investigation, Banerjee et al. found that Swiss albino mice fed diets containing coriander oil saw nearly a doubling in GST activity. No substantial alterations were seen in CYP or aryl hydrocarbon hydroxylase. While very few research concentrate on coriander for its anticancer qualities, those that are available show coriander may be essential [3].

Rosemary

Rosmarinus officinalis, a woody plant with aromatic needle-like leaves, is called rosemary. Rosemary is a Mediterranean native with a bitter, astringent flavor and extremely fragrant qualities that go well with a range of cuisines. Rosemary is a member of the family Lamiaceae, and it includes a variety of potentially physiologically active chemicals, including antioxidants such as carnosic acid and rosmarinic acid [4]–[6]. Additional bioactive substances include rosmaridiphenol, caffeic acid, ursolic acid, betulinic acid, camphor, and rosmanol. Crude and refined extracts of rosemary are now widely accessible commercially due to their strong antioxidant activity. While the findings are difficult to interpret, it seems that adding rosemary and other herbs to a balsamic vinegar preparation used in soups and salads would protect individuals from oxidative stress. There is strong evidence that rosemary extracts or its individual components help prevent malignancies brought on by chemicals. For instance, topical administration of a rosemary extract has been shown to prevent BP- and DMBA-mediated skin carcinogenesis during the initiation and promotion stages. Similarly, topical administration of pure carnosol and ursolic acid reduced the development of skin tumors caused by -o-tetradecanoylphorbol acetate in DMBA-induced mice. DMBA-induced mammary cancer in rats has also been demonstrated to be delayed by adding rosemary or carnosol. A variation in the kinds and quantities of DMBA adducts linked to DNA may be the source of the

depression in malignancies. Such data, albeit not well investigated, points to rosemary's potential to affect drug-metabolizing enzymes [7]–[9].

CONCLUSION

A growing body of research indicates that malignancies are treatable illnesses rather than the inevitable result of aging. According to the research in this chapter, spices may be dietary components that cut cancer risk and influence tumor behavior. Spices have been used for ages as preservatives, coloring agents, and flavoring agents, among other uses. There are over 0 spices that are often used in cooking, thus this chapter just touches the surface of the whole influence of herbs and spices. There is no doubt that one or more spices may have an impact on a variety of processes, such as immunocompetence, apoptosis, angiogenesis, and proliferation. Although the data currently available are intriguing, much more research is required to identify which individuals will benefit most from excessive consumption of one or more spices, the precise exposure levels required to produce the desired outcome, and what interactions may be present with other elements of the diet or with medications that a person may regularly take.

REFERENCES:

[1] P. Lai and J. Roy, “Antimicrobial and Chemopreventive Properties of Herbs and Spices,” *Curr. Med. Chem.*, 2012, doi: 10.2174/0929867043365107.

[2] R. Al-Alawi, J. H. Al-Mashiqri, J. S. M. Al-Nadabi, B. I. Al-Shihi, and Y. Baqi, “Date palm tree (Phoenix dactylifera L.): Natural products and therapeutic options,” *Frontiers in Plant Science*. 2017. doi: 10.3389/fpls.2017.00845.

[3] N. Vutakuri, “Curcumin - Breast Cancer Therapeutic Agent to Replace Allopathic Treatments with Extensive Side Effects,” *J. Young Investig.*, 2018.

[4] M. I. Qadir and B. N. Cheema, “Phytoestrogens and related food components in the prevention of cancer,” *Crit. Rev. Eukaryot. Gene Expr.*, 2017, doi: 10.1615/CritRevEukaryotGeneExpr.2017019473.

[5] K. Ercan, O. F. Gecesefa, M. E. Taysi, O. A. Ali Ali, and S. Taysi, “Moringa Oleifera: A Review of Its Occurrence, Pharmacological Importance and Oxidative Stress,” *Mini-Reviews Med. Chem.*, 2020, doi: 10.2174/1389557520999200728162453.

[6] M. Singh, P. Singh, and Y. Shukla, “New strategies in cancer chemoprevention by phytochemicals,” *Front. Biosci. - Elit.*, 2012, doi: 10.2741/389.

[7] R. A. Al-Alawi, J. H. Al-Mashiqri, J. S. M. Al-Nadabi, B. I. Al-Shihi, and Y. Baqi, “Date Palm Tree (Phoenix dactylifera L.),” *Front. Plant Sci.*, 2017.

[8] J. W. Fahey, K. K. Stephenson, and A. J. Wallace, “Dietary amelioration of Helicobacter infection,” *Nutrition Research*. 2014. doi: 10.1016/j.nutres.2015.03.001.

[9] Y. Shukla, “New strategies in cancer chemoprevention by phytochemicals,” *Front. Biosci.*, 2012, doi: 10.2741/e389.

CHAPTER 21

HERBAL TREATMENTS FOR DERMATOLOGIC DISORDERS

Piyush Mittal, Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- mittalpiyush23@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

This overview of herbal remedies includes both less-common plants that have been proven to be effective in the treatment of dermatologic illnesses as well as those that have clinical effectiveness supported by scientific research. This chapter also contains information about each herb's safety, which will help doctors choose which herbal treatments to utilize in their clinical settings. This talk also covers typical pharmacological interactions and adverse effects of herbal remedies that could occur in a dermatology environment.

KEYWORDS:

Ayurveda, Clinical Effectiveness, Dermatitis, Medicine, Skin Condition.

INTRODUCTION

From ancient times, herbal treatments have been utilized to treat skin conditions. Even the great apes, who are our closest living relatives, employ herbal remedies for self-medication. Regional commerce in ethnobotanical treatments led to the development of particular herbs and their applications based on locally accessible plants. Throughout Europe, the Middle East, Africa, India, China, Japan, Australia, and the Americas, distinct regional herbal usage systems have emerged. The Ayurvedic herbs in India and the herb combinations created as part of traditional Chinese medicine in China are two well-known systems that are still in use. The saga of the saga of the saga of the saga of the saga of the saga of the saga of the saga. The adverse effects of chemical pharmaceuticals were more widely known, there was a cry to go back to nature, natural cures became a part of the green revolution, and there was a comeback of organic products, all of which have led to a rise in the usage of herbs in recent years. Patients and, to a lesser extent, doctors are becoming more interested in herbal treatments, particularly those for skin conditions. Herbal remedies that have been utilized for millennia throughout Asia, particularly in China and India, are now the subject of scientific research. The regulatory body Commission E in Germany is in charge of regulating herbal products and their suggested use. The only way that herbal items are currently regulated in the US is as dietary supplements. There is no standardization of active substances, purity, or concentration. Also, there are no rules dictating which plants may be promoted for certain purposes [1].

Setting and Context

Ayurvedic medicine has been documented in India from about BC. The holistic and physiological concepts are combined in the Ayurveda medical system. It is founded on the idea that the cosmos is made up of the same five energy components that make up the human body: earth, water, fire, air, and space. Three doshas, seven dhatus, and three malas are produced by the interplay of these five components. An imbalance among the three doshas is said to be the cause of all illnesses. An intricate process of assessing the physical findings, pulse, and urine is used to make the diagnosis, along with an eight-point thorough assessment to assess both the physical and mental elements of the disorder. Based on the results, the therapy is then modified

to suit each person. TCM has been documented for nearly 4, 0 years [2]. TCM treats the full individual, much as Ayurvedic medicine does. It is based on the yin and yang energies, which are complimentary. Yin and yang are in harmony in healthy people, and disease happens when there is an imbalance between the two energies. The Chinese also acknowledge five elements, each of which is associated with a certain organ: earth, water, fire, air, and metal. In addition, they identify a flow of energy, termed chi or qi, through the body in primary meridians. The Chinese assess how the environment and the body interact, including how waste leaves the body and how food, drink, and air enter.

To identify the source of the imbalance and then choose the best course of action for each individual, special attention is paid to the physical examination of the person's tongue, iris, and pulses. Often, a combination of acupuncture, massage, and herbs is used as treatment. There is a whole textbook on dermatology in TCM. Herbal treatment was first used as folk medicine in Western medicine. It started in the United States during the colonial era, when women utilized homegrown botanicals in their homes. The use of herbal medicine in the United States was strongly impacted by Native American usage of plant therapies. These Old World European and Native American traditions were developed and employed by a group of doctors known as the "eclectics" in the nineteenth century. European and Chinese techniques had a greater impact on herbal medicine as it developed in the United States [3].

In order for doctors to better educate and care for their patients, the recent rise in the usage of alternative medicine has prompted increased study into alternative therapies. Herbal medicines are still offered as dietary supplements in the US, where there are presently no requirements for strength and effectiveness. Purity requirements for several frequently used herbs were established by the Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act of A regulatory body in Germany under the name of Commission E thoroughly examined common European botanicals.

Overall, 0 herbal products were reviewed by Commission E for the quality of their clinical effectiveness, safety, and applications. This knowledge has helped to standardize herbal remedies in Germany [4], [5]. A few herbal treatments have substantial scientific support for their effectiveness in treating dermatologic problems, and many have survived the test of time for their efficacy in doing so. With alternative herbal remedies, a patient will often treat themselves, frequently without receiving the best possible expert guidance.

Patients are advised to ensure the safe use of herbal therapies by choosing therapies that are likely to achieve their health goals, making informed decisions about the efficacy, safety, interactions, and usage of the medicine, selecting therapies that are likely to achieve their goals, having a correct diagnosis prior to using the therapy, consulting reputable practitioners, disclosing all the remedies they are using to the practitioners, monitoring the effects of the remedies, both positive and negative, and waiting patiently . The name of the product, its ingredients, including the parts of the plant and the quantity of raw material used, the daily dosage and timing of dosages, allergy and other warning statements, quality and safety testing, the product's expiration date, the manufacturer, the country of manufacture, the claims and indications for use, and information on how to store the product are all things that patients should look for on the labeling of their medications.

DISCUSSION

Herbal Dermatological Disorders Treatments

Herbal remedies are effective for treating the majority of common dermatologic conditions. The conditions are given below in alphabetical order [6].

Acne

Because of their exfoliative qualities, fruit acids including citric, gluconic, gluconolactone, glycolic, malic, and tartaric acids have shown some promise in the treatment of acne when applied topically. In one trial, 5% benzoyl peroxide was shown to be more effective than placebo in treating both inflamed and noninflamed acne lesions, whereas gluconolactone was more effective. Fruit acids' primary negative impact, particularly at larger amounts, is irritation.

Alopecia

In a randomized, controlled, double-blind trial including individuals with alopecia areata, essential oils were examined. Every day, the scalp was massaged with a concoction of essential oils, including thyme, rosemary, lavender, and cedarwood, in carrier oils including grape seed and jojoba. Just carrier oils were used to massage the scalp in the control group. Success was assessed using consecutive photos, a six-point scale, and a computer analysis of alopecia-prone locations. In comparison to the control group, the treatment group showed a statistically significant improvement. There were no negative consequences noted. A topical Chinese herbal remedy called Dabao was tested in a double-blind, six-month research on 6 individuals for its effectiveness in treating androgenic alopecia. % ethanol, % water, and 8% Chinese herbal extracts are the main components of Dabao. These extracts come from saffron flowers, mulberry leaves, stemona root, pepper fruits, sesame leaves, Sichuan pepper fruit peel, ginger root, Chinese angelica root, pseudolarix bark, and hawthorn fruit. % ethanol, % water, and 2% each of cherry laurel water, cinnamon water, licorice syrup, sugar syrup, and a solution of burnt sugar served as the components for the placebo. There was an increase in nonvellus hairs in both groups. Despite the fact that the Dabao group had statistically more nonvellus hairs than the placebo group, neither group's appearance significantly improved [7].

Recurring Veins

Insufficiency According to Callam , chronic venous insufficiency and varicosities affect at least -% of men and -% of women, causing morbidity. Due to low adherence to existing treatments like compression stockings, alternative remedies are sought for. The German Commission E has given its approval for the oral use of butcher's broom and sweet clover to treat venous insufficiency-related symptoms such pain, heaviness, itching, and edema. Although sweet clover was shown to promote venous reflux, or "venous return," butcher's broom was shown to both raise venous tone and have diuretic qualities in animal trials. When used as directed, butcher's broom and sweet clover both seem harmless. Ginkgo has been used orally for centuries in China and has more recently gained popularity in Europe and the United States as a treatment for a variety of ailments, including dementia, heart disease, asthma, vertigo, tinnitus, impotence, cerebral and vascular insufficiency, vertigo, and vertigo. The following is a list of the most common questions we get from our customers [8].

The impact of grape seed extract on CVI was investigated in a number of double-blind experiments carried out in France. Oligomeric proanthocyanidins, a class of bioflavonoids with a history of positive effects on capillaries, are present in grape seed extract. In the trials, dosages ranged from mg taken orally once day to 0 mg taken three times daily. No significant negative effects were noted. One of the most studied herbal substitutes is horse chestnut seed extract. Terpenes are plant-based substances found in horse chestnut, with aescin being the most potent one . Leukocyte activation, a significant pathophysiological factor leading to CVI, seems to be linked to the mechanism of action. Aescin may potentially lessen vascular leakage by preventing the enzymes elastase and hyaluronase from degrading proteoglycans at capillary endothelium. For individuals with CVI, several double-blind, randomized studies of HCSE

given orally have been carried out. It has been shown that HCSE reduces the volume of the lower legs as well as the calf and ankle circumference.

Dermatitis

The dried flowers of Arnica montana or other arnica species are used to make arnica. While topical preparations are quite safe and effective, oral administration may still pose serious health risks, even in modest doses. Arnica has been used for millennia as an anti-inflammatory treatment for bruises, bug bites, boils, irritated gums, acne breakouts, and hemorrhoids in addition to painful muscles and joints. It is also a component of several psoriasis and seborrheic dermatitis treatments. It has Commission E approval for the topical management of skin irritation.

From ancient times, the daisy family member German chamomile has been used both orally and topically to cure a wide range of ailments, including gastrointestinal problems, oral or skin irritation, and dermatitis. For a tea that may be consumed or used topically, use two to three teaspoons of dried flowers per cup of water. In Germany, topical medications with cream or ointment bases are also used. Research have shown that topical chamomile is similar to 0.% hydrocortisone and improves contact dermatitis brought on by sodium lauryl sulfate . In a tiny double-blind study, it was discovered that chamomile considerably reduced the surface area of wounds, and that it also sped up the healing process in animal trials. Moreover, chamomile has in vitro antibacterial properties. Dermatitis due to an allergic contact has been the predominant side effect recorded.

Chamomile is categorized as a Class 1 drug since it is deemed safe for topical and oral usage. German chamomile has been shown to have anti-inflammatory, wound-healing, and antibacterial properties because to an essential blue oil that also includes flavonoids, sesquiterpene alcohol, and -bisabolol. In animal trials, these compounds had anti-inflammatory and antispasmodic effects, in part because they inhibited cyclooxygenase and lipoxygenase in vitro. The flavinoids also prevent human basophilic polymorphonuclear leukocytes activated by antigen from releasing histamine. Also, the drug -isabolol showed that it promoted granulation tissue during the healing of wounds. Brewer's yeast and bittersweet nightshade are believed to have comparable anti-inflammatory and antibacterial properties. British research have shown that TCM-derived herbal medication is useful in treating atopic dermatitis. In TCM, the body is treated as a whole, and the goal of treatment is to bring the body's systems back into balance. It is challenging to conduct randomized, controlled studies since a patient's custom blend of several herbs is created [9] .

Simplex Herpes

A member of the mint family with a lemon fragrance is lemon balm. The chopped leaves may be steam-distilled to produce an essential oil. Herpes simplex therapy and mild wound care are examples of topical usage.

After using 1% balm extract cream five times a day for eight days to 6 patients with herpes simplex lesions, % of them stated that the lesions had completely cleared up. Another study indicated that the size of the lesions and healing time were statistically superior in the group that received balm extract when applied to lesions within hours of the beginning of symptoms. The balm's antiviral properties seem to be attributed to tannin and polyphenols. Balm belongs to Class 1 and is very safe to use topically and internally.

Burns and Wounds

The leaves of aloe vera generate a gel, juice, or latex. The gel is extracted from the leaf's center core and has been used topically for generations to cure burns and wounds. The inner leaf skin's juice or latex is a bitter, yellow fluid that is removed, and it is often marketed dry as a powder that has very strong laxative properties. Aloe vera reduces the burning, itching, and scarring connected to radiation dermatitis, according to many case reports and animal studies. Also, it has been shown that aloe vera helps frostbite, medically caused wounds, and chronic leg ulcers heal more quickly. In vivo animal research have been done on the mechanism of action. Vasoconstriction and platelet aggregation-inducing thromboxane A2, thromboxane B2, and prostaglandin 2 are reduced by aloe vera. Increasing cutaneous perfusion reduces tissue loss brought on by ischemia. Moreover, in vitro research has shown a carboxypeptidase that deactivates bradykinin, reducing discomfort at the treatment site. Aloe vera's salicylic acid works as an analgesic and anti-inflammatory by preventing the formation of prostaglandins. Aloe vera also contains magnesium lactate, which is hypothesized to have antipruritic properties by preventing the enzyme histidine decarboxylase from converting histidine to histamine in mast cells. It is also believed that the immunomodulatory features of the gel polysaccharides, particularly the acetylated mannans, contribute to the reduction in inflammation. Moreover, aloe vera has in vitro bactericidal and antifungal properties. Topical aloe vera gel's primary side effect is an allergic contact dermatitis. Laparotomies and Cesarean sections have both been linked to complaints of delayed healing. When handled appropriately, aloe vera is thought to be quite safe when taken orally [10].

Contradictions of Herbal Therapy

The safety classes assigned to herbal treatments vary widely. For instance, some are safe to eat and have excellent safety ratings, while others are very poisonous and biologically active and need to be handled with extreme caution. Each part of this chapter addresses the safety classifications of the herbs that are described, and the subsequent sections go into more depth about the interactions of herbal remedies that may be used in dermatology. There have been several reports of cutaneous responses to herbal remedies, with allergic contact dermatitis being the most frequent cutaneous adverse event. There have been reports of skin responses that are more severe. Topical herbal therapies for psoriasis and atopic dermatitis caused erythroderma in two patients, while "golden health blood-purifying pills" containing red clover, burdock, queen's pleasure, poke root, prickly ash, sassafras bark, and Passiflora caused Stevens-Johnson syndrome in one patient. Ingestion of indigenous African herbal remedies has reportedly been linked to the development of bullous and nodular lichen planus.

Also, a young lady with leukemia-related Sweet syndrome that was brought on by an allergic reaction to topical arnica ointment was documented. Severe systemic side effects have been recorded with the use of TCM herbal combinations for the treatment of dermatologic illnesses. Hepatotoxic consequences are the most prevalent. There have been accounts of people with acute liver failure that even resulted in death, while the majority of patients recover without experiencing any significant side effects as long as the medicine is discontinued. Agranulocytosis and renal failure have also been reported. After receiving treatment with the TCM kamisyoyo-san for seborrheic dermatitis, one patient developed adult respiratory distress syndrome. A woman was reported with reversible dilated cardiomyopathy after having therapy for her atopic dermatitis with a Chinese herbal tea. Heavy metals including lead, arsenic, and mercury have reportedly been found in Chinese and Indian herbal treatments. Moreover, over-the-counter herbal formulations from other nations have been discovered to include prescription drugs. Several herbs have incorrect names or labels.

It is obvious that further study is required to determine the effectiveness, safety, ideal applications, and standardization of herbal treatments. The lack of patentability of herbal components in the US is a deterrent in a country where the average cost of double-blind testing for FDA medicine clearance is in the millions of dollars, necessitating patentability for private businesses to make a profit. A alternative method of financing research is necessary since herbal treatments are still classified as dietary supplements. As compared to corporate and governmental financing of research for conventional medications, the National Institutes of Health's support for complementary and alternative medicine research is paltry.

CONCLUSION

Since ancient times, many herbal treatments have been practiced with positive anecdotal outcomes. A few randomized, controlled trials have also shown notable outcomes when using herbal therapies to treat dermatological conditions. Several nations, like Germany, now demand the standardization of herbal remedies and strict guidelines about their use and effectiveness in the treatment of sickness. Knowing the typical herbal substitutes available and the interactions or side effects that could arise is crucial for better patient counseling.

REFERENCES:

[1] P. D. Shenefelt, “Herbal treatment for dermatologic disorders,” in *Herbal Medicine: Biomolecular and Clinical Aspects: Second Edition*, 2011. doi: 10.1201/b10787-19.

[2] M. K. Bedi and P. D. Shenefelt, “Herbal therapy in dermatology,” *Archives of Dermatology*. 2002. doi: 10.1001/archderm.138.2.232.

[3] S. J. Kang *et al.*, “Efficacy and safety of So-Cheong-Ryong-Tang in patients with atopic dermatitis and respiratory disorders: Study protocol of a double-blind randomized placebo-controlled trial,” *Med. (United States)*, 2020, doi: 10.1097/MD. 0000000000018565.

[4] D. J. Brown and A. M. Dattner, “Phytotherapeutic approaches to common dermatologic conditions,” *Archives of Dermatology*. 1998. doi: 10.1001/archderm.134.11.1401.

[5] M. Glavas Dodov and S. Kulevanova, “A review of phytotherapy of Acne vulgaris,” *Maced. Pharm. Bull.*, 2009, doi: 10.33320/maced.pharm.bull.2009.55.001.

[6] I. F. F. Benzie and S. Wachtel-Galor, *Herbal medicine: Biomolecular and clinical aspects: Second edition*. 2011.

[7] S. Meyer, T. Vogt, M. Landthaler, and S. Karrer, “[Use of phytopharmaceutical agents in dermatology. Indications, therapeutic approaches and side effects].,” *Hautarzt.*, 2005.

[8] S. Meyer, T. Vogt, M. Landthaler, and S. Karrer, “Use of phytopharmaceutical agents in dermatology: Indications, therapeutic approaches and side effects | Einsatz von phytopharmaka in der dermatologie: Indikationen, therapiehinweise und nebenwirkungen,” *Hautarzt*, 2005.

[9] M. A. Nilforoushzadeh, G. R. Asghari, F. Jaffary, and M. Tabrizchi, “Anti-itching and healing effects of ointments containing herbal essential oils of mentha piperita, eucalyptus globulus, caryophyllus aromaticus, cinnamomum ceylanicom in skin eczema,” *J. Isfahan Med. Sch.*, 2012.

[10] S. Meyer, T. Vogt, M. Landthaler, and S. Karrer, “Einsatz von phytopharmaka in der dermatologie: Indikationen, therapiehinweise und nebenwirkungen,” *Hautarzt*. 2005. doi: 10.1007/s00105-005-0949-y.

CHAPTER 22

MEDICAL BOTANY AND DIABETES

Piyush Mittal, Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- mittalpiyush23@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

Around % of people utilize traditional medicines that are made from medicinal plants. This paper focuses on Indian herbal medicines and plants that are utilized, particularly in India, to treat diabetes. Diabetes is a serious illness that affects many people worldwide from all areas of life. It is proven to be a serious health issue in India, particularly in the cities. While there are several ways to lessen diabetes' negative effects and its subsequent problems, herbal formulations are favoured since they have less side effects and are less expensive. A list of medicinal plants having established antidiabetic properties, as well as herbal medications used to treat diabetes, is collected. Damage caused by free radicals is one of the etiologic factors linked to the onset of diabetes and its consequences, thus an anti-diabetic drug having antioxidant qualities would be more advantageous. As a result, information on these medicinal plants' antioxidant benefits is also provided.

KEYWORDS:

Anti-Diabetic, Anti-Oxidant, Diabetes, Medicinal Plant, Traditional Medicines, Caesalpinia Bonducella.

INTRODUCTION

Due to their natural origins and lack of side effects, herbal medicines have seen an exponential surge in popularity over the last several years in both developed and developing nations. Medicinal plants, minerals, and organic materials are the source of many traditional medicines now in use. The herbal preparations used in Indian traditional healthcare systems include a variety of medicinal plants known as rasayana that have been utilized for over a thousand years . In Indian systems of medicine most practitioners design and deliver their own formulas. The, 0 plants that are used as medicines worldwide are recorded by the World Health Organization. Of of these species, 0 species are utilized economically on a sizable basis in India. India is the world's greatest producer of medicinal plants and is known as the world's botanical paradise. The present research focuses on plants and herbal medication formulations used to treat diabetes mellitus, a serious condition that cripples people all over the globe and causes enormous economic losses [1].

Diabetes

Diabetes is a chronic condition of carbohydrate, lipid and protein metabolism characterized by elevated fasting and post prandial blood sugar levels. According to estimates, the incidence of diabetes will rise from 4% in to 5.4% by. According to WHO, poorer nations will shoulder the majority of the cost. Research undertaken in India in the past decade have shown that not only is the incidence of diabetes high but also that it is expanding quickly in the urban population. In India, there are thought to be million persons who have diabetes. By, this figure is probably going to rise to 0.2 million.

A complicated metabolic condition known as diabetes mellitus is caused by either inadequate or dysfunctional insulin. Since there are insufficient beta cells, type I diabetes is brought on by inadequate insulin production. In contrast to Type II diabetes patients, who are insulin independent and may be managed with dietary modifications, exercise, and medication, people with this condition are completely reliant on exogenous sources of insulin. % of people with diabetes have type II diabetes, which is the more prevalent kind. Both types of diabetes may cause symptoms such as: I high blood sugar levels; extraordinary thirst; frequent urination; severe hunger and weight loss; blurred vision; nausea and vomiting; extreme weakness and exhaustion; and irritability, mood swings, etc [2].

Experimental evidence points to the role of free radicals in the etiology of diabetes and, more crucially, in the emergence of diabetic complications, even though the pathophysiology of diabetes is still not completely understood. Free radicals may affect how cells operate by harming proteins, lipids, DNA, and other biological components. Many recent research have shown that free radical-neutralizing antioxidants may prevent experimentally induced diabetes in animal models and lessen the severity of diabetic consequences. The anomalies induced in lipids and proteins are the main causative factors for the development of diabetes complications. Free radicals primarily attack extra-cellular and long-lived proteins in diabetes patients, including collagen, laminin, and elastin. Due to hyperglycemia, these proteins are altered to create glycoproteins.

The development of diabetic sequelae such cataracts, microangiopathy, atherosclerosis, and nephropathy is linked to the alteration of these proteins, which are found in tissues like the lens, vascular wall, and basement membranes. Free radicals oxidize lipoproteins when a person has diabetes. There are also many anomalies of lipoprotein metabolism in very low density lipoprotein, low density lipoprotein, and high density lipoprotein in diabetes. Increased oxidative stress in diabetes conditions increases lipid peroxidation. In addition, non-enzymatic glycosylation of proteins results in the formation of advanced glycation end products. Atypical activities of cells and tissues are produced by AGE accumulation on long-lived molecules in tissues. Moreover, through binding to certain macrophage receptors, AGEs can contribute to enhanced vascular permeability in both micro and macrovascular tissues. Free radicals are produced as a consequence, which causes endothelial dysfunction. AGEs may also develop on histones and nucleic acids, which can result in gene expression changes and mutations [3].

Diabetes requires a multifaceted treatment strategy since it is a complex illness that causes several complications. Diabetes patients' cells either do not react to insulin or do not produce enough of it. Patients get insulin injections if their bodies are completely insulin-deficient. Although many various medications are being researched for people whose cells do not react to insulin while taking into account potential abnormalities in glucose metabolism. Acarbose, miglitol, and voglibose are a few examples of glucosidase inhibitors that are used to treat post-prandial hyperglycemia at the digestive level. They prevent the breakdown of carbs, which lowers cell absorption of glucose. Metphormine is one kind of biguanide that is used to increase glucose absorption by peripheral cells. Glibenclamide, a sulphonylurea, is an insulinotropic secretogogue for pancreatic cells. Despite the fact that many treatments are used for therapy, there are certain restrictions because of their high cost and undesirable side effects, such as hypoglycemia development, weight gain, gastrointestinal problems, liver toxicity, etc. . An appropriate anti-diabetic and antioxidant treatment is being sought for in light of current developments and the contribution of oxidative stress to the complications of diabetes mellitus.

Once again, medicinal plants are being researched for the treatment of diabetes. Many conventional medications have been developed from model compounds found in therapeutic plants. One effective oral glucose-lowering medication is metformin. The usage of Galega officinalis to treat diabetes served as the foundation for its development. The hypoglycemic ingredient, guanidine, is abundant in galega officinalis. The alkyl biguanides synthalin A and synthalin B were first offered as oral anti-diabetic medications in Europe in the s but were later withdrawn as insulin became more widely accessible because guanidine is too toxic for therapeutic usage. Nonetheless, the development of metformin was influenced by the use of guanidine and biguanides. More than 0 conventional plant remedies for diabetes have been documented to far, but only a small portion of them have undergone scientific and medical scrutiny to determine their usefulness. Several herbal extracts have been shown to have hypoglycemic effects in type 2 diabetes models in both humans and animals. The World Health Organization's Expert Committee on Diabetes has advised greater research into traditional medicinal plants [4], [5].

Lack of scientific and clinical evidence demonstrating herbal medicine's effectiveness and safety is a major barrier to its incorporation into current medical procedures. Clinical studies on herbal medicines are required, as are the creation of straightforward bioassays for biological standardization, pharmacological and toxicological assessment, and the creation of numerous animal models for testing toxicity and safety. Establishing the active component in these plant extracts is also crucial.

DISCUSSION

Indian Medicinal Herbs with Positive Benefits for Diabetes and Other Conditions. Many herbal treatments are recommended for diabetes and its consequences. The primary components of these compositions are medicinal herbs. a list of medicinal plants having positive benefits on diabetes and associated conditions [6].

Aloe barbadensis and Aloe vera

Popular indoor plant aloe has a long history of usage as a variety of traditional remedies. Gel and latex are the two fundamental compounds that may be extracted from the plant. Aloe vera gel is the leaf pulp or mucilage, aloe latex, sometimes referred to as "aloe juice," is a bitter yellow secretion from the pericyclic tubules immediately under the outer epidermis of the leaves. In both normal and diabetic rats, aloe gum extracts efficiently enhance glucose tolerance. Exudates from Aloe barbadensis leaves were used to treat chronic diabetes in rats that had been alloxanized, but not a single dosage. In diabetic rats, bitter principle from the same plant in both acute and chronic dosages had a hypoglycemic effect. By stimulation of insulin production and/or release from pancreatic beta cells, aloe vera and its bitter component exert this activity. Moreover, this plant enhances wound healing in diabetic rats and exhibits dose-dependent anti-inflammatory action.

Indica Azadirachta

In streptozotocin-treated rats, hydroalcoholic extracts of this plant exhibited anti-hyperglycemic action, and this effect was attributed to an increase in glucose absorption and glycogen deposition in isolated rat hemidiaphragms. This plant's properties include anti-diabetic, anti-bacterial, anti-malarial, anti-fertility, hepatoprotective, and antioxidant activities.

Bonducella Caesalpinia

The Indian tribal people employ Caesalpinia bonducella, which is extensively dispersed across the country's coastline area, to regulate their blood sugar. In chronic type II diabetes animals, both the aqueous and the ethanolic extracts demonstrated strong hypoglycemic action. These extracts also boosted glycogenesis, which raised the amount of liver glycogen. Insulin secretion from isolated islets may be increased by two fractions, BM 9 and BM 0 B. In streptozotocin - diabetic rats, the aqueous and % ethanolic extracts of Caesalpinia bonducella seeds shown antihyperglycemic and hypolipidemic effects. The inhibition of glucose absorption may be the cause of the seed extracts' antihyperglycemic effects. The medication may have both antidiabetic and antihyperlipidemic effects.

Deciduous Capari

When feeding alloxanized rats fruit powder containing % of the Capparis decidua fruit extract for three weeks, hypoglycemic effects were seen. Moreover, in erythrocytes, kidney, and heart, this extract greatly decreased lipid peroxidation caused by alloxan. In order to lessen oxidative stress, C. decidua was also discovered to change the amounts of the enzymes catalase and superoxide dismutase. Moreover, C. decidua shown hypolipidemic activity [7].

Coccidioides Indica

Patients with diabetes received dried extracts of Coccinia indica for six weeks. These extracts improved the lowered and elevated activities of glucose-6-phosphatase, lactate dehydrogenase, and lipoprotein lipase in untreated diabetics. The oral administration of 0 mg/kg of C. indica leaves resulted in enhanced glucose tolerance in both normal and diabetic dogs and substantial hypoglycemia in alloxanized diabetic dogs.

Genevieve Jambolana

In India decoction of kernels of Eugenia jambolana is used as home treatment for diabetes. This also makes up a significant portion of several herbal diabetic medications. Blood glucose levels are reduced as a result of the antihyperglycemic effects of aqueous and alcoholic extracts as well as lyophilized powder. By incubation of plant extract with isolated islets of Langerhans from normal as well as diabetic mice, it was shown that insulin production was boosted. Moreover, the liver and kidneys insulinase activity was decreased by these extracts.

Mangifera indica: While an oral aqueous extract of this plant's leaves did not affect blood glucose levels in normoglycemic or streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats, it is nevertheless utilized as an anti-diabetic medication in Nigerian traditional medicine. Nevertheless, when the extract and glucose were given to the rats at the same time as well as when the extract was given to them minutes before the glucose, antidiabetic effect was seen. The findings suggest that Mangifera indica aqueous extract has hypoglycemic action. This could be caused by a decrease in the intestinal absorption of glucose.

In India and other Asian nations, momordica charantia is often used as an antihyperglycemic and antidiabetic medication. In several animal models, extracts of fruit pulp, seeds, leaves, and the whole plant were proven to exhibit hypoglycemic effects. When given subcutaneously to langurs and humans, polypeptide p, which was extracted from the fruit, seeds, and tissues of M. charantia, significantly reduced blood sugar levels. In normal and STZ diabetic rats, ethanol extracts of M. charantia had antihyperglycemic and hypoglycemic effects. The liver's inhibition

of glucose-6-phosphatase in addition to fructose-1, 6-biphosphatase and activation of hepatic glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase activity may be the source of this [8].

Sanctum Ocimum

It is often referred to as Tulsi. This plant has a long history of being valued for its healing abilities. Both normal and alloxan-induced diabetic rats significantly reduced their blood sugar levels when given an extract of Ocimum sanctum leaves in water. Tulasi showed significant hypoglycemic and hypolipidemic effects in diabetic rats by reducing fasting blood glucose, uronic acid, total amino acids, total cholesterol, triglycerides, and total lipid . On days and of the trial, oral treatment of plant extract for days caused a drop in plasma glucose of around 9. and 4%, respectively. In diabetic rats compared to controls, skeletal muscle and hepatic glycogen levels declined by and %, respectively, but renal glycogen content rose by a factor of. Moreover, this plant exhibited anti-asthmatic, anti-stress, antibacterial, antifungal, antiviral, anticancer, gastric antiulcer, antioxidant, antimutagenic, and immunostimulant properties.

It is a plant from the Euphorbiaceae family that may grow up to cm tall. It is often referred to as Bhuiamala. It is dispersed over India's drier regions, namely the Deccan, Konkan, and south Indian states. It is traditionally used in the treatment of diabetes. Strong antioxidant activity was reported in Phyllanthus amarus methanolic extract. In rats with diabetes that had been alloxanized, this extract also decreased blood sugar. Moreover, the plant has anti-inflammation, anti-mutagenic, anti-carcinogenic, and anti-diarrheal properties. Pterocarpus marsupium is a moderate to big deciduous tree that is mostly found in mountainous areas of India. Pterostilbene, a component produced from the wood of this plant, induced hypoglycemia in dogs, demonstrating that the tannates present in the extract are the source of the extract's hypoglycemic effect. It has been shown that the flavonoid fraction from Pterocarpus marsupium induces pancreatic beta cell regranulation. This plant's marsupin, pterosupin, and liquiritigenin all shown antihyperlipidemic action. Its active ingredient, epicatechin, has been shown to be insulinogenic, increasing insulin release and proinsulin conversion to insulin in vitro. Like insulin, epicatechin enhances oxygen absorption in fat cells and tissue slices of different organs and, in a dose-dependent way, raises the glycogen content of the rat diaphragm [9].

Foenum-Graecum Trigonella

Fenugreek seeds are widespread across India and are often used as one of the main ingredients in Indian spices. A new amino acid called 4-hydroxyleucine, found in fenugreek seeds, enhanced the release of insulin from isolated islet cells in both rats and humans. Both normal and diabetic rats had dose-dependent decreases in blood glucose levels after oral administration of 2 and 8 g/kg of plant extract. Fenugreek seed administration significantly enhanced glucose oxidation and restored normal creatinine kinase activity in the heart, skeletal muscle, and liver of diabetic rats. Moreover, it decreased the activity of fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase and glucose-6-phosphatase in the liver and kidneys . Antioxidant activity is also shown by this plant.

Drugs Formulated with Herbs

Several formulations are on the market and are used frequently by diabetes patients on the advice of the doctors. According to reports, the Himalaya-produced diabetes medication increases hepatic and muscle glucagon levels, peripheral glucose consumption, B cell repair and regeneration, and c peptide levels and acattery from the state. By lowering the levels of glycated hemoglobin, bringing the microalbuminuria back to normal, and adjusting the lipid profile, it has an effect similar to insulin.

The active ingredient in the epinsulin sold by Swastik formulations is epicatechin, a benzopyran. The islet's cAMP concentration is elevated by epicatechin, and this results in a rise in insulin release. It contributes to the process of turning proinsulin into insulin by boosting cathepsin activity. Moreover, it inhibits Na/K ATPase activity from the patient's erythrocytes and has an insulin-like impact on the osmotic fragility of human erythrocytes. It corrects neuropathy, retinopathy, and irregular glucose and lipid metabolism. It preserves the health of all the diseased organ systems. It is said to be an excellent adjuvant for insulin-dependent diabetic mellitus and a cure for non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, reducing the quantity of insulin required. Together with current oral hypoglycemic medications, it is suggested. It has a reputation for reducing diabetes complications. As it has a mild hypoglycemic effect, there is no danger of hypoglycemia.

Pancreatic Tonic is an ayurvedic herbal supplement that is now offered as a dietary supplement. It is a botanical blend of ancient Indian ayurvedic herbs. Garry and Sun advertise bitter gourd powder. Low blood and urine sugar levels are a result. It enhances body's resilience against infections and cleanses blood. Excellent medical benefits may be found in bitter gourd. It has medicinal properties and acts as a laxative, stomachic, antibilious, and antipyretic tonic. Moreover, local African and Asian therapies employ the bitter gourd. Particularly, the bitter gourd is used as a traditional remedy for diabetes. Bitter glycosides, saponins, alkaloids, reducing sugars, phenolics, oils, free acids, polypeptides, sterols, -amino acids, including methionine, and a crystalline substance called p-insulin are among its constituents. In addition to being antihaemorrhoidal, astringent, stomachic, emmenagogue, hepatic stimulant, anthelmintic, and blood purifier, it is said to have hypoglycemic effect.

Admark Herbals Ltd.'s Dia-Care is marketed as having an -month cure rate for both Type 1 and Type 2 diabetes after days of therapy. Insulin users will finally be freed from their need on it. The only thing that has to be consumed in the morning on an empty stomach is water, not sediment. Fresh water is poured to the leftover medication, which is then stored for the whole day and ingested minutes before to supper. The medication has an extremely bitter flavor. It is a completely natural formula with no negative side effects. Diabetes-Daily Care, made by Nature's Health Supplies, is a special natural formula that improves sugar metabolism safely and efficiently. as well as,this paper [10].

Gurmar powder developed by Garry and Sun is an anti-diabetic medication, which reduces the intestinal absorption of sacharides, which avoids blood sugar swings. Moreover, it links the metabolic processes of the liver, kidney, and muscles. Gurmar has the ability to lower blood sugar levels and promote insulin production. When administered to the tongue in diabetes, it suppresses sweet taste receptors and eliminates glycosuria. It dulls the flavor of sweets and items that are bitter, like quinine. Together with these qualities, it also regulates the metabolism of the liver, kidney, and muscles and acts as a diuretic and heart stimulant.

CONCLUSION

The Ayurvedic remedy DIABETA, which comes in capsule form, is an anti-diabetic with a mix of effective immunomodulators, antihyperlipidemics, anti-stress, and hepatoprotective of plant origin. The Diabeta formulation is based on historical ayurvedic references, which are further supported by contemporary research and clinical testing. In order to properly manage the variables and processes that result in diabetes mellitus, the hormone beta operates on several locations in a variety of ways. It combats the numerous causes of diabetes and treats the degenerative consequences that arise as a result of the disease. As a single agent addition to synthetic anti-diabetic medications, Diabeta is secure and efficient in controlling Diabetes Mellitus. When administered as an adjuvant to instances of uncontrolled diabetes, diabetes aids

in overcoming resistance to oral hypoglycemic medications. In addition to promoting symptomatic alleviation of problems including weakness, giddiness, leg pain, body discomfort, polyuria, and pruritis, diabetes gives patients a feeling of well-being. Syndrex made by Plethico Laboratories comprises extracts of germinated fenugreek seed. For a millennium, fenugreek has been a component of traditional remedies. Now, animal models and cultured islet cells are being used to understand the mechanism of this anti-diabetic medication.

As a result, a wide variety of plants have been utilized alone or in combination with other ingredients to treat diabetes and its consequences. The lack of clearly specified active components in this herbal composition is one of its main issues. Knowing the active ingredient and how its molecules interact is crucial for analyzing the product's therapeutic effectiveness and standardizing it. The mechanism of action of several of these plants is now being studied using model systems.

REFERENCES:

[1] J. R. L. Ehrenkranz, N. G. Lewis, C. R. Kahn, and J. Roth, "Phlorizin: A review," *Diabetes/Metabolism Research and Reviews*. 2005. doi: 10.1002/dmrr.532.

[2] J. xin Cheng *et al.*, "Traditional uses, phytochemistry, and pharmacology of Ficus hispida L.f.: A review," *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*. 2020. doi: 10.1016/j.jep.2019.112204.

[3] A. Vasas, O. Orbán-Gyapai, and J. Hohmann, "The Genus Rumex: Review of traditional uses, phytochemistry and pharmacology," *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*. 2015. doi: 10.1016/j.jep.2015.09.001.

[4] M. H. Rahman, M. J. Fardusi, and M. S. Reza, "Traditional knowledge and use of medicinal plants by the Patra tribe community in the North-Eastern region of Bangladesh," *Proc. Pakistan Acad. Sci.*, 2011.

[5] C. JiaXin *et al.*, "Traditional uses, phytochemistry, and pharmacology of Ficus hispida L.f.: a review.," *J. Ethnopharmacol.*, 2020.

[6] Varuna V, "Coccinia Grandis (L) Voigt-Review," *Varuna. World J. Pharm. Res.*, 2018.

[7] W. Sujarwo, A. P. Keim, G. Caneva, C. Toniolo, and M. Nicoletti, "Ethnobotanical uses of neem (Azadirachta indica A.Juss.; Meliaceae) leaves in Bali (Indonesia) and the Indian subcontinent in relation with historical background and phytochemical properties," *J. Ethnopharmacol.*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.jep.2016.05.014.

[8] M. Ozturk and K. R. Hakeem, *Plant and human health: Pharmacology and therapeutic uses*. 2019. doi: 10.1007/978-3-030-04408-4.

[9] A. Singh and N. Bithel, *Biopharmacological activities of medicinal plants and bioactive compounds*. 2021. doi: 10.52305/EIIE4314.

[10] *Plant and Human Health, Volume 1*. 2018. doi: 10.1007/978-3-319-93997-1.

CHAPTER 23

EXPERIMENTAL TECHNIQUES FOR HERBAL MEDICINE'S BIOACTIVE INGREDIENTS

Mukesh Singh Sikarwar, Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- mukeshsikarwar@gmail.com

ABSTARCT:

Chinese herbal medicines have long been a potent way to cure illnesses in Chinese people and are extensively utilized in China. The primary components derived from herbs with medicinal activity are called bioactive compounds. Here, we examine the data showing that these compounds have protective properties, including pro-apoptosis, anti-proliferation and anti-migration, anti-inflammation, anti-atherosclerosis, anti-infection, anti-senescence, and suppression of structural remodeling, by controlling the expression of ncRNAs. They thus have the potential to be used as therapeutic agents for conditions including cancer, cardiovascular disease, nervous system illness, inflammatory bowel disease, asthma, infectious disorders, and diseases associated with aging. The intriguing options and fresh alternatives provided by bioactive substances for the treatment of the aforementioned disorders demand urgent examination, notwithstanding the relatively little and insufficient research conducted to far.

KEYWORDS:

Cardiovascular, Cardioprotective, Diseases, Herbal Medicines, Anti-Inflammation.

INTRODUCTION

Traditional Chinese medicine is an inductive science, while modern medicine is a deductive one. Deductive medicine has a narrow emphasis, therefore it's possible that the individual's overall needs are overlooked. TCM focuses on enhancing a person's overall wellbeing by successfully balancing multiple physiological systems, rather than on extremely specific objectives or issues. This all-encompassing strategy, which maintains the person in a physiologically balanced condition, enables the mobilization of biological reserves to handle physiological issues. The deductive method, in contrast, necessitates expertise, is more disease-focused than patient-focused, and depends on precise goals. One of the key factors contributing to the growing acceptance for alternative medicine and over-the-counter health products is contemporary medicine's neglect of holistic treatment. More clinical issues may be resolved if the two opposing medical science systems can be unified. In addition to aggressive single-target contemporary medicine, holistic care to support physiological balance to enable spontaneous adjustment and the development of improved biological defenses might be used to treat a particular issue. A better and more comprehensive approach to treating patients in the context of contemporary medicine that is research and evidence based may result from the two systems being more harmoniously integrated. This necessitates effectiveness research that extends beyond narrowly defined goals. To assure the quality of herbal medications, which are often mislabeled, tainted, or adulterated, study is also necessary [1].

In Herbal Medicines and the Role of Chemometrics Fingerprinting

Throughout the last century, research on herbal medicine has concentrated on a variety of topics, including pharmacognosy, quality assurance, and laboratory and clinical testing for effectiveness. The discovery of active components in herbs for medication development has

received a lot of attention. The discovery of artemisinin derivatives in China was one extremely successful example. This has been shown to be beneficial against malaria and other parasites and to have cytotoxic effects against various malignancies. It was formerly used historically as a herbal remedy for fever and chills. The cytotoxic medications vincristine, derived from the periwinkle flower, and taxol, derived from the yew tree's bark, are two other examples from France. To achieve such significant results, however, significant amounts of equipment and money are needed, and there have been several failures. Botanical mixes are intricate and diverse. Innovative methods and significant laboratory expenditure are needed for the extraction and identification of potential active components in whole herbs or herbal formulations. While success is not assured, clinical efficacy evidence is required, and the whole expenditure is quite expensive. The quest for bioactive components in herbs requires a more economical method [2].

An approach must take into account a number of factors of a herbal medication, including effectiveness, safety, quality and consistency of composition, and mode of action, in order to be universally acknowledged in the creation and assessment of herbal medicines. Understanding the quality of the herbs, which may vary greatly, is a special area that needs investigation. Herbs may sometimes be misidentified, and contamination or adulteration of herbs is a typical occurrence. Herbs must undergo extensive authentication. Chromatographic investigations may produce a fundamental chemical record of quality control, and DNA fingerprinting can establish the species information associated to the place of origin of the manufacturing. It's also crucial to consider quality in terms of the lack of pesticides, heavy metals, fungus, and microorganisms. Every batch of a herb should be screened and cross-checked to standard extract records given by the appropriate academic institution in China. The current requirements for labeling samples of therapeutic plants, however, fall well short of expectations. Modern technologies may aid with the identification and quantification of chemical components that are physiologically active as well as with the creation of chemometric profiles of a recognized plant for quality evaluation. This procedure improves quality control of herbal medication and will enhance its application in contemporary medicine [3].

While ensuring the effectiveness and consistency of herbal remedies is crucial, issues about their modes of action and efficacy must also be addressed. A good framework for the total assessment of herbal medicines is provided by an investigative strategy that integrates biochemical, biological, and chemometric testing in a "layered" method. Prior to parallel testing of further fractionations and their combinations, chemometric screening is used to examine properties or biological effects on crude herbal extracts. Not the substance itself, but physiologically active chemical groups are the focus of chemometric analysis, which also provides a chemical fingerprinting approach that identifies other target compounds with known and unknown chemical features. With the aid of the chemometric fingerprint analysis technique, it is possible to compare the chemical compositions of various samples using all the components that were identified in their entire chromatograms, which were produced by methods such as liquid chromatography, gas chromatography, mass spectrometry, and others. These methods also make it easier and more efficient to evaluate bioactivity levels, find novel biomarkers, and active substances [4].

DISCUSSION

This was the formulation that was used: Danshen and gegen raw herbs were prepared, authenticated , and extracted in one batch using good manufacturing practices at the Hong Kong Institute of Biotechnology, Science Park, Hong Kong, People's Republic of China. The raw herbs were supplied by Sichuan farms in a ratio of 7:3 by weight. After an accelerated

stability test, the produced herbs were subjected to aqueous extraction at 0°C twice for minutes and once for minutes, spray dried at -0 mmHg and -°C, and the dried powder was then encapsulated. Based on the advice from Chinese materia medica and our prior in vitro experiment, a dose of 3 g/day of the DG formulation was selected for the clinical investigation Using high-resolution ultrasonography, the brachial artery's endothelial function was examined at rest. Briefly stated, the diameter of the brachial artery was measured on B-mode ultrasound images using a linear array transducer and a typical Advanced Technology Laboratories ultrasound system. Hyperemia was induced after deflation by placing a tourniquet cuff on the forearm. In order to elicit flow-mediated endothelium-dependent dilation, scans were taken at rest, during post-tourniquet-reactive hyperemia, and 4 minutes after 0 g of sublingual glyceryltrinitrate was administered. According to Jannides et al. , endothelial NO release is the primary cause of FMD, and this method's measurements of endothelial responses in the brachial artery show a strong correlation with both the degree of coronary atherosclerosis and coronary endothelial function in the same participants . It has already been shown in the literature that this assessment of arterial physiology is accurate, reproducible, and has a low interobserver error. Using a planned and standardized scanning technique for the right and left carotid arteries, as previously reported, a single blinded operator conducted all carotid scans. A blinded researcher used a confirmed automated edge-detecting and measuring software package as previously stated to capture all scans on super-VHS videotape for later offline assessment of intima-media thickness. In terms of intraobserver variability, the mean IMT had a CV of 1.0% and was 0. 0. Mm [5], [6].

All patients were given the option to continue receiving open-label DG for a further 6 months for reduced dose-titration and consolidation of the therapeutic effects after the double-blind study phase. According to the Helsinki Declaration, the Chinese University of Hong Kong's institutional ethics council on human research gave its approval to the study protocol. Data processing was done to provide group mean values and standard deviations as needed. A Student's t-test was used to find potential intergroup differences in the case of a normal distribution. Otherwise, a Kruskal-Wallis test was used to evaluate any potential intergroup differences. A Wilcoxon Rank-Sum test was used to determine the groups in the event that there were any discernible intergroup differences. FMD, GTN, and IMT were the three main study end points; additional non-primary outcome variables were examined using a Bonferroni correction for multiple comparisons. Age, variations in total and LDL cholesterol, and therapy groups were evaluated as the main predictors of FMD alterations using multivariate linear regression analysis. Statistical significance is defined as a p value 0.

Danshen-Gegen Formulation's Cardioprotective Benefits

The favorable effects of DG formulation have been shown to be similar to those of antioxidants, vasodilators, antihypertensives, and antiatherosclerotics based on the outcomes of a number of in vitro, ex vivo, and in vivo biological experiments. In the in vitro systems, the DG formulation was able to directly remove free radicals and stop oxidative stress on LDL, cardiomyocytes, and red blood cells. Also, the DG formulation inhibited the further evolution of severe hypertension in primary hypertensive rats and showed ex vivo vasodilatory effects on precontracted rat aortas. Moreover, DG formulation decreased vSMC migration and proliferation as well as monocyte-endothelial cell adhesions, two pathogenic aspects of atherosclerosis. Also, the rabbit model was used to show the in vivo antiatherosclerotic properties of the DG formulation. The clinical study demonstrated that the DG formulation was well tolerated and that treating CAD patients was linked with long-lasting improvements in FMD and IMT, despite the absence of notable changes in the biochemical indicators of CAD risk, such as lipids or homocysteine. Overall, these results provide solid and trustworthy

experimental support for the DG formulation for cardiovascular health. Yet, consistently high-quality herbs and herbal formulations are essential for therapeutic usage, which necessitates efficient quality control [7].

Herbal Quality Control: A Chemometrics Approach

According to Zschocke, ClaBen-Houben, and Bauer , Upton , the State Pharmacopoeia Commission of the People's Republic of China , one to a few representative chemical constituents with known chemical structures are typically used as "markers" to identify herbal medicines. Unknown herbs are located, and the markers discovered within a recognized herb establish its identification. The same method is often used to determine the individual herbs that make up a combination medicine, such as the DG formulation. Maintaining the proper ratios of each herb is also crucial for maintaining the quality of a mixture. According to Zhu et al., the main chemical classes in the DG formulation for contre include isoflavonoid and phenolic acid for danshen. The Chinese Pharmacopoeia specifies tanshinone IIA, a diterpene, and SAB, a phenolic acid, as the markers of danshen. These ingredients are said to encourage blood flow. Puerarin, an isoflavonoid that acts as an antioxidant and a marker for malignancy.

The Pattern-Oriented Method in Chemometrics

Authorized organizations and the pharmaceutical business have allowed the usage of a few markers for the herbal medicine market. Certain markers, meanwhile, are not exclusive and may be discovered in other plants as well. Radix Ligustici chuanxiong, for instance, contains Z-ligustilide, a frequently used marker of Radix Angelicae sinensis, danggui. Nevertheless, the three-herb combination preparation fufang danshen diwan used in Chinese medicine is only advised to use one marker, salvianic acid. Ginseng and Ginkgo biloba are two examples of botanicals for which there are more than ten chemical standards available. In addition, reference materials and markers are lacking for a lot of plants. As a result, the previously approved marker technique is hardly sufficient from the perspective of quality control, and a multicompound strategy is currently utilized for the authentication of herbal medications. Using retention durations, mass spectra, and ultraviolet spectra as examples, this method uses chemical components with known chemical structures as well as those for which only partial chemical information is available. This technique gives a more precise and dependable tool for quality control. A "compound-oriented strategy" is the collective name for the marker and multicompound techniques [8].

Information of value is included in the vast volume of data received via hyphenated instruments. A major difficulty for scientists is figuring out how to mine or dig it out. Chemometrics has recently been discovered to be quite helpful in this regard. The implementation of multicompound and other methodologies in the research of herbal medicine is encouraged by the development of new chemometrics data-processing techniques. An herbal medicine's chromatogram often exhibits overlapping peaks. It is difficult to effectively differentiate them by changing just the experimental circumstances. Chemometric resolution methods and other mathematical techniques, including heuristic evolving latent projection, multicomponent spectral correlative chromatography, window factor analysis, subwindow factor analysis, augmented evolving window orthogonal projection, principal component analysis, and partial least squares, may be useful in this situation.

For instance, GC-MS and chemometrics were used to thoroughly examine the chemical compositions of the danggui's head, body, and tail. To resolve the GC-MS data sets of these components and get the pure mass spectra of several chemical components, the tools SFA and AEWOP were used. Up to common components were discovered, and of them were identified by comparing their resolved spectra to those found in the Wiley Registry of Mass Spectral data

and the National Institute of Standards and Technology MS database. This method helps to better grasp the variations in the various danggui sections. Wang et al. studied the absorption and metabolite components in plasma samples from a rabbit that was administered an oral solution of danggui utilizing LC-DAD-atmospheric pressure chemical ionization mass spectrometry and data processing using such specialized techniques. In danggui and biofluid samples, more than chemical components were found, although more than components were only found in plasma. The various chemical patterns reveal which danggui components were absorbed and which metabolites were produced.

The People's Republic of China's State Food and Drug Administration declared in that all commercially available injectable Chinese medications must submit their chemical fingerprints for approval. Patterns like the chromatogram, spectrum, and others are referred to as "fingerprints" in this context. The notion of photoequivalence is used in the utilization of this fingerprint. From the perspective of authenticity, a chromatogram and spectrum provide data on all the chemical components of a sample that the used equipment or procedure can identify. Of fact, the instruments employed greatly influence how a pattern appears, and the spectral pattern of a herb or herbal combination may have overlapping profile structures and seem to be highly sophisticated. Without the use of chemometric methods to clarify the pattern and identify relevant chemical properties, this may make data processing and interpretation challenging [9]. The pattern or fingerprint method to quality control is fundamentally different from the traditional compound-oriented approach, which use known markers and target compounds, in terms of how it is applied. Even if some of the chemical features of the components may not be completely understood, fingerprinting uses all of them simultaneously. As a result, the fingerprint has a record of all the bioactive and inactive substances. This is crucial since a Chinese medicine's biological activity is often caused by a number of different elements, some of which may have significant interactions. The retention durations of components from various samples as detected in all or specific sections of their chromatograms are used for comparison in the fingerprint method to qualitative analysis. Analytical chemists often use the "true" retention time to determine the identity of an unidentified chemical.

Data preprocessing is used to reduce noise levels and perform peak alignment in order to get the real chromatogram of a sample, which allows for quantitative analysis. Chromatograms under examination must be repeated under similar experimental circumstances. A component's chromatographic peak height or area is often used to estimate the amount of that ingredient in a given sample. In terms of the pattern approach, a typical method of evaluation is to determine how similar the constituent parts of various samples are to one another. A quantitative measurement of this kind is provided by the similarity index parameter. The correlation coefficients between the studied fingerprints often serve as the index. Every data point relating to a retention time and associated height is taken into account in the comparison in this manner. If the SI value is near to 1.0, then the chemical compositions of the two samples involved are virtually equal to each other. The unknown herb is recognized or authenticated if one of them is a known or reference herb and the other is one that is not. Additionally, since it allows for tolerance of the inherent discrepancies and variations across several samples of the same Chinese medicine, the application of SI involves a fuzzy logic idea when evaluating the sample's quality.

Using a Chemometric Method to Control Herb Quality

The identical prescription was used to make two distinct batches of DG in the years. These samples of Chinese medicine underwent the authentication processes advised by the Chinese Pharmacopoeia. Below is a quick description of them. They go through the methods and techniques for chemical analysis, the markers that are employed, and relevant experimental

settings. The primary methods of analysis used were thin-layer chromatography and high performance liquid chromatography. In order to get more data and more precise findings with fewer tests, we adapted or borrowed some of these approaches from the literature. In order to get additional information for the chemometric data analysis, the samples' 3D chromatograms were also acquired using the hyphenated HPLC-DAD and LC-DAD-MS devices. Daizin, daizein, and SAB were other sodium danshensu target compounds that were also included. For the chemicals for which reference standards were available, calibration curves were created by graphing the area of the chromatographic peak versus concentration. This allowed for the determination of these chemicals' amounts in unidentified samples.

The samples' HPLC-DAD and LC-DAD-MS data were analyzed using the compound-oriented and pattern techniques. To further corroborate the identification, we additionally examined the UV or MS spectral data at those retention periods of interest. As previously detailed in a research on the Chinese medicine formulation ping-wei powder, CRMs and other chemometric approaches were used to resolve profiles with overlapping or "embedded" peaks. Here, it would be wise to investigate yet another practical CRM program. According to our experience, CRM may assist in obtaining more chemical data from a single experiment, reducing the amount of time needed for analysis. Quality control is carried out more effectively, efficiently, and dependably as additional chemical information, such as retention durations and UV or MS spectra of a herbal medicine's constituents, may be collected via the combination of experimental investigation and chemometric data analysis. For this reason, components with incomplete information may also be incorporated. Dealing with a Chinese medicine composition that has many component herbs will benefit greatly from this. This approach was used throughout the project, and some of the outcomes are reported [10].

The pattern-oriented technique in this study additionally used the DG sample HPLC-DAD and LC-MS fingerprints for quality control. The chromatograms themselves must be preprocessed to get the genuine ones as indicated in Section .4.3 in order to apply the whole fingerprint to the task. Here, data preparation includes steps like background shifting, peak alignment, and noise reduction. Following that, correlation analysis was used to quantitatively determine how comparable these real chromatographic patterns were, providing the relevant SIs for evaluation. Moreover, the average chromatogram based on samples of the same Chinese medication from various locations was also obtained. If the range of individual chromatograms was not excessively wide, this functioned as the representative or "standard" fingerprint of the drug. The computer-aided similarity evaluation system approach, which was programmed and operated in the MATLAB® environment, was used to analyze all chemometrics data . In order to get more precise pure spectra and retention durations of the relevant components, overlapping peak clusters in the preprocessed fingerprints were subsequently resolved using a CRM.

The Chinese medicine samples of contre, the reference herb of dashen, and the two batches of DG were examined using the TLC separation method. In the TLC investigation, quality control was carried out using the two markers tanshinone IIA and puerarin. These two markers were found in the TLC plates that had been prepared using visible light. All the relevant samples had these markers. Chemical component separation is more effective using HPLC than TLC, and the markers used in the TLC experiment were subsequently examined using HPLC-DAD and LC-MS. Likewise, the single herb samples included the corresponding markers for contre and danshen. Based on these two markers and the additional target chemicals in Section .4.1, these component herbs were also discovered in the DG products. In doing so, we examined their acquired retention durations as well as the UV spectra that were seen at the same times in various chromatograms. The stability of the DG product was then assessed using both the

marker and pattern approaches. In order to determine the shelf life of a product, we looked closely at the variations in the chemical contents of the DG samples before and after three months of "accelerated aging" treatment. The sample preparation and experimental techniques were same for all samples, and all samples were evaluated by HPLC-DAD. The results indicated that for puerarin and tanshinone IIA, the marker amounts at time 0 and after three months were 0. and 0. mg/g and 0. and 0. mg/g, respectively. This suggests that the product was steady.

Moreover, we broadened stability testing utilizing the pattern technique for comparison with all the chemical components found in these samples. The time-0 and 3-month chromatograms seemed to be highly similar when compared visually, but when compared statistically, their similarity index was computed and determined to be 0.. The peak height or intensity observed at each retention time was included in the profile structure utilized for comparison in this case. While distinct peaks represent different components, it should be remembered that the HPLC-UV chromatographic height is directly proportional to the concentration of a component in the sample in question. Because of this, this method of stability testing simultaneously examines the loss of individual components and how they change into other components.

Diabetes-Related Medicinal Plants and Herbs

Several societies have depended largely on plants and herbs for therapeutic reasons throughout history. Modern medicine is currently examining how these traditional sources might be utilized alone or in combination with standard drugs to treat and maintain diabetes. For a herb to be useful and to reduce any potential negative effects, its source and purity are essential. While utilizing herbal medicines, it is always advisable to get professional advice. Many sources of therapeutic plants have been studied, including the following:

American ginseng is thought to increase insulin secretion and reduce blood sugar levels. According to one research, those with type 2 diabetes who took American ginseng before or with their meal had a modest drop in their blood sugar levels thereafter. Bay leaf, also known as Laurus nobilis, has been shown to improve the body's ability to utilise insulin at doses as low as 0 mg, or less than half a teaspoon. Additional seasonings like cumin, coriander, turmeric, cinnamon, and cloves are also effective in regulating blood sugar levels. Study has shown that 0 mg of berberine given two to three times per day may regulate cholesterol and blood sugar levels just as well as metformin .The bitter gourd , often known as bitter melon, has generated a great deal of attention for its capacity to control blood sugar . Another plant that is used to treat diabetic neuropathy pain is cayenne. It is used as an external cream and is sometimes referred to as chili pepper. Cinnamon - This common spice has shown to improve insulin sensitivity and lower cholesterol and blood sugar levels in those with Type 2 diabetes. The most efficient and secure component, according to Diabetes Action-funded study, was a novel water-soluble polyphenol type-A polymer. Only the water soluble extract with trademarked names like Cinnulin PF or CinnSulin should be used since raw cinnamon contains fat soluble components like coumarin, which may be harmful at large dosages. Further research supported by Diabetes Action discovered that cinnamon extract has neuroprotective effects on the brain, which may enhance Alzheimer's disease prevention and therapy. Alzheimer's disease is now often referred to as Type 3 Diabetes.

Curcumin, a popular dietary spice, has been used for pain relief and wound healing for centuries. It also seems to prevent autoimmune illness by controlling inflammatory cytokines. According to studies, curcumin may be 0 times more effective than the typical diabetic medication Metformin in increasing insulin sensitivity and reversing type 2 diabetes. Gamma linolenic acid, or GLA, found in evening primrose oil abnormal fatty acid metabolism in

diabetes may result in reduced nerve activity and may help to cause peripheral neuropathy. Early research indicates that evening primrose oil, which is high in gamma linolenic acid, enhances neuron and blood flow.

Trigonella foenum-graecum, or fenugreek Fenugreek, a staple of Indian and Middle Eastern cooking, has been found to reduce total cholesterol while raising good cholesterol and regulating blood sugar levels . Fenugreek seeds are also an excellent source of soluble fiber. One of nature's best sources of soluble fiber is flax, which is found in the seed form. Study has revealed a considerable improvement in glucose readings by the ingestion of flax fiber. Furthermore, alpha linolenic acid may be found in abundance in flax oil. In bread or muffins, flax seed may be crushed or utilized in its oil.

1. **Ginger:** While ginger is most often used as a culinary flavoring, it may also be taken orally in greater doses for a variety of digestive comfort. Some small studies in diabetic mice suggest that ginger may lower blood sugar and cholesterol levels.
2. **Ginkgo Biloba:** Adding a Ginkgo Biloba extract to the therapy plan helped individuals with type 2 diabetes whose condition was being inadequately controlled by metformin.

In a research by Diabetes Educators, patients received a commercial supplement containing 0 mg of gymnema sylvestre leaf extract, and their A1C levels significantly decreased. This substance is known as Gurmar. Hydroxycitric Acid , a herbal component that is naturally present in the garcinia cambogia fruit, may be crucial in decreasing cholesterol and helping people lose weight by suppressing their appetite. Research has to be done further because of the inconsistent outcomes and probable negative effects. Anybody using drugs for either high cholesterol or diabetes shouldn't take HCA. In the Philippines, a plant known as Lagerstoemia speciosa, sometimes named Crepe Myrtle, Queen's Flower, or Pride of India, is called Banaba. It has been shown to control blood sugar levels by enhancing insulin activity.

Nopal, popularly known as the prickly pear cactus, is a delicacy in South America. Its scientific name is Opuntia fulignosa. Its significance in regulating and reducing blood sugar has been the subject of several investigations. In a research conducted in Austria, opuntia improved insulin sensitivity in individuals without diabetes while lowering blood lipid levels and blood sugar. Throughout Asia, Europe, and the Middle East, onions and garlic have long been used to lower blood sugar levels. Allicin and allyl propyl di sulfide, which are sulfur compounds found in these plants and have chemical structures like those of insulin, are thought to lower blood sugar levels.

Pomegranate

This mouthwatering fruit has several health benefits, including polyphenols, which have anti-inflammatory, antiviral, and anti-tumor effects. Its cinical function is being studied presently with good first findings in decreasing cholesterol levels in persons with diabetes and enhancing blood flow to the heart.

Pycogenol is an extract from pine bark that has been used to treat diabetic ulcers and diabetic retinopathy in several nations. Lowering glucose levels had a good impact, according to a German research.

Red Yeast Rice

Red yeast rice has comparable anti-inflammatory and lipid-lowering benefits as statin medicines, which are often prescribed by physicians to reduce LDL cholesterol levels. Red yeast rice extract does contain the same ingredients as the prescription medication lovastatin, thus this should only be used as directed by a doctor. Resveratrol is a polyphenolic substance

that may be found in a variety of plants, including berries and grapes. There is significant evidence that Resveratrol possesses anti-aging properties and is a powerful anti-inflammatory. Silymarin, often known as milk thistle, has long been used to treat liver conditions. Recent studies have shown that silymarin works better than metformin patients at reducing insulin resistance, decreasing fasting insulin levels, and lowering liver enzyme levels.

Sulforaphane

Cruciferous plants including broccoli, kale, and cabbage contain this phytochemical. It has shown great cancer prevention abilities as well as a % blood sugar decrease.

Tea

Because to its high antioxidant polyphenol content, green tea has been used effectively in traditional Chinese and Indian medicine to promote digestion, speed up the healing of wounds, reduce blood sugar levels, and improve heart health. According to studies, oolong, green, and black teas improve insulin sensitivity. Yet, since they lack camellia senensis, herbal teas were ineffective.

CONCLUSION

Using the conventional marker technique and TLC, HPLC-DAD, and LC-DAD-MS, the authenticity of samples of the DG combination formulation and its constituent herbs contre and danshen was thoroughly investigated. Also, the analysis of chemometric data was done together with the multicompound and newly designed pattern or fingerprint approaches. similar components were identified by comparing the resolved retention times and pure MS spectra obtained from the corresponding LC-DAD-MS chromatograms of the two batches of DG using CRM and other mathematical techniques. By using a multi-component method, this enhances the quality control of intricate systems like the creation of Chinese medicine combinations. Also, the pattern technique was utilized to analyze all the components of the two batches as identified by LC-DAD-MS in order to determine their chemical compositions and associated component concentrations. The two batches had high HPLC-UV SI values, and the stability of the DG products was evaluated using the same methodology.

REFERENCES:

[1] G. M. Adebo and S. D. Y. Alfred, “Gender dimension of herbal medicine’s knowledge and practice in Ekiti and Ondo states, Nigeria,” *J. Med. Plants Res.*, 2011.

[2] A. C. B. Carvalho, J. P. S. Perfeito, L. V. C. e Silva, L. S. Ramalho, R. F. de Oliveira Marques, and D. Silveira, “Regulation of herbal medicines in Brazil: Advances and perspectives,” *Brazilian Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences*. 2011. doi: 10.1590/s1984-82502011000300004.

[3] D. Lee, H. Xu, H. Liu, and Y. Miao, “Cognitive modelling of Chinese herbal medicine’s effect on breast cancer,” *Heal. Inf. Sci. Syst.*, 2019, doi: 10.1007/s13755-019-0083-3.

[4] M. Leonti, P. O. Staub, S. Cabras, M. E. Castellanos, and L. Casu, “From cumulative cultural transmission to evidence-based medicine: Evolution of medicinal plant knowledge in Southern Italy,” *Front. Pharmacol.*, 2015, doi: 10.3389/fphar.2015.00207.

[5] S. Puri, D. Sahal, and U. Sharma, “A conversation between hyphenated spectroscopic techniques and phytometabolites from medicinal plants,” *Anal. Sci. Adv.*, 2021, doi: 10.1002/ansa.202100021.

[6] K. Yang, L. Zeng, and J. Ge, "Exploring the Pharmacological Mechanism of Danzhi Xiaoyao Powder on ER-Positive Breast Cancer by a Network Pharmacology Approach," *Evidence-based Complement. Altern. Med.*, 2018, doi: 10.1155/2018/5059743.

[7] C. Da Dong *et al.*, "Utilizing network pharmacology to explore the underlying mechanism of qiangzhi decoction in treating tourette's syndrome," *Ann. Palliat. Med.*, 2020, doi: 10.21037/apm-20-2158.

[8] S. Rohani, N. Suhada, Z. Mohammad, and S. Azhar, "Traditional herbal medicine as adjunctive therapy for colorectal cancer: a scoping review," *Tradit. Med. Res.*, 2022, doi: 10.53388/tmr20220127260.

[9] M. A. Tareau, A. Bonnefond, M. Palisse, and G. Odonne, "Phytotherapies in motion: French Guiana as a case study for cross-cultural ethnobotanical hybridization," *J. Ethnobiol. Ethnomed.*, 2020, doi: 10.1186/s13002-020-00404-1.

[10] S. M. Alsanad, R. L. Howard, and E. M. Williamson, "An assessment of the impact of herb-drug combinations used by cancer patients," *BMC Complement. Altern. Med.*, 2016, doi: 10.1186/s12906-016-1372-x.

CHAPTER 24

ISSUES WITH DRUG-HERB INTERACTIONS AND THE MORALITY OF TREATING PATIENTS WITH HERBAL MEDICINE AS A MAIN OR ADJUNCTIVE TYPE OF CARE

Vaibhav Rastogi, Associate Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- vaib.asa@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

This chapter aims to provide a concise summary of the fundamental moral standards that apply to herbal medicines and other natural health products. Three key principles of biological ethics beneficence, nonmalfeasance, and patient autonomy apply to the use of natural remedies as well. There is discussion of the use, pharmacology, safety, and effectiveness of herbal medications as well as the diseases for which they may be utilized as main vs adjunct therapy. Problems of NHP-drug interactions are examined, since they may be synergistic or antagonistic and must be considered anytime contemporaneous usage of products occurs. Knowledge gaps are found, and suggestions are made to further investigate the problems surrounding NHP-drug interactions.

KEYWWORDS:

Herbal medicines, ethical, pharmaceuticals, pharmacology, and pharmacokinetic are some of the keywords.

INTRODUCTION

Conventional medicine is seen to be based on bioethical concepts including beneficence, nonmalfeasance, patient autonomy, fairness, and public responsibility since they direct clinician interactions with patients in a way that prioritizes the needs of the patients. It is becoming clear that these same bioethical considerations apply to these other kinds of health care as complementary and alternative medicine, including the use of herbal medications, gains popularity in the Western world. With relation to the use of herbal medicine, this chapter covers the fundamental ethical concepts of beneficence, nonmalfeasance, and autonomy. The bioethical concept of beneficence outlines a clinician's duty to advance a patient's well-being; it is active since physicians must take appropriate action to guarantee that some favorable result will take place. Utility and positive beneficence are the two categories of beneficence.

Positive beneficence requires that one's activities benefit others; preventing others from suffering harm is an example of positive beneficence. Utility beneficence refers to one's endeavor to weigh all the benefits and risks to a patient in order to find the optimum option. Regardless of the area of medicine being addressed, clinicians have a duty to behave with beneficence. According to the Institute of Medicine Committee on the Use of Complementary and Alternative Medicine, in order to fulfill this obligation, the clinician must advocate for any therapy that is risk-free and effective, regardless of whether it is conventional, complementary, or alternative. A doctor must evaluate the safety of a therapy and decide if there is evidence supporting its effectiveness before giving advice to a patient. The need to treat people with respect is known as nonmalfeasance. The responsibility to avoid damage is separate from the duty to promote well-being, despite the fact that this ethical concept is often connected with the principle of beneficence [1]. NHPs are thought to be benign and natural, however one

should be aware that "natural" does not always equate to safe. When patients use NHPs, harm is often likely, thus physicians must step in when appropriate to follow nonmalfeasance guidelines. When providing herbal medications, health care professionals should be aware of both the dangers and advantages.

Herbal Medicine Pharmacology

The pharmacology of all herbal medications and the vast variety of ailments they are used to treat are beyond the purview of this chapter. Nevertheless, it is important to keep in mind that it is not practical to assess all products for their pharmacology due to the enormous quantity of herbal medications as well as the significant variability within and between brands. Although certain herbal remedies, like echinacea and St. John's wort, have undergone thorough research, the majority of them have not. For this reason, care should be taken when suggesting herbal medications to particular groups including children, pregnant or lactating women, or the elderly. Even those that have been somewhat well researched often have limited information in these populations.

The fact that many products may include numerous active phytoconstituents, some of which are unknown, adds to the difficulty of investigating NHPs Committee on the Use of Complementary and Alternative Medicine). It is also vital to remember that herbal remedies have been the foundation of many pharmaceutical drugs. Modified plant isolates are a frequent source of novel chemical entities, and estimates indicate that around % of conventional medications are derived from plants. For instance, vinblastine is made from periwinkle, a plant that is often found in Europe and Northern Africa. In many different forms of cancer, this medication is mainly utilized as a chemotherapeutic agent. Due to plants' ability to create secondary metabolites, which may be exploited as lead molecules, herbal remedies are significant sources of novel pharmaceuticals. In addition, the sheer quantity of chemical substances with unknown chemical components that may have adverse effects on health is far more than the number of chemical compounds for which the biological activity is fully recognized by scientists. These innovative molecules provide an exceptional chance for medication development [2].

The physiological effects of NHPs may be as diverse as those of traditional medications, with certain NHPs allegedly useful in promoting the immune system, the cardiovascular system, and the gastrointestinal system. As a result, reviewing the precise effectiveness of all NHPs is beyond the purview of this chapter. Instead, guiding concepts for evaluating efficacy and safety will be covered, since they are crucial components of informed consent. Randomized controlled trials and systematic reviews are often used to assess herbal medicine in ways that are similar to those used for mainstream medicines. Nevertheless, if such study does not take into account the distinctions between NHPs and medicines, it could not be as useful as it might be.

Heterogeneity is a key distinction between NHPs and medicines. Due to a variety of variables, including temperature, soil, and growth circumstances, NHPs are heterogeneous. This often causes an uneven quantity of active substances from one batch to the next. Compared to traditional medications, these changes have a significant impact on NHPs, which presents a significant challenge for researchers since it may be difficult to choose the product and dosage to examine. Researchers have advised that items should be clearly specified and submitted to quality assurance in order to make the outcomes of studies utilizing these products more consistent since standardization may elude NHPs [3].

DISCUSSION

Herbal Medicine as the Main Form of Therapy

If the risk-benefit ratio of using herbal remedies as the main therapy is better than that of conventional options, it is undoubtedly possible and even advised. This does not rely just on the natural treatment being more effective. If herbal medicine is less dangerous than its conventional equivalent, it could be the best option. The severity of the condition frequently determines how comfortable a practitioner will feel recommending the use of herbal medicine as the main form of therapy. Even in the lack of strong effectiveness evidence, a practitioner may be more receptive to using herbal medicine as the main therapy for minor or self-limiting conditions if it is seen to be safe and is routinely favoured by patients [4]. The patient must be told if the herb has not undergone enough research since the benefit of treating a small ailment could not outweigh the risk of an untested medication . In order for the patient to make an educated decision, risk must be assessed compared to the established safety profile of the herbal treatment and its conventional equivalent.

For instance, it could be okay to allow a patient to consume ginger, an NHP that has been shown to be both safe and helpful, if she is experiencing moderate morning sickness as a result of being pregnant. If conventional medication was not performing as expected or if the patient had adverse effects that restricted its usage, a practitioner would be ready to recommend the use of herbal remedies as the main treatment in situations of moderately severe sickness. In contrast, the use of herbal remedies as the main therapy for severe or life-threatening illnesses would be restricted to disorders for which there were no known effective conventional medications or for which herbal remedies had strong evidence of success. Evidence, patient preferences, and professional judgment should all be taken into consideration when making decisions in each case. Clinicians should explore this therapy strategy with patients if there is evidence that the herbal medication may be safe and effective. When a physician encounters an NHP that is mostly unfamiliar to them, they should be encouraged to seek guidance on how to utilize it and get expertise with treatments that are relevant to and interesting to their patient group.

Herbal Medicine as Supplementary Care

NHPs are often used by people to enhance the effectiveness of prescription drugs or to lessen their adverse effects. In these situations, a physician may feel at ease using a lesser criterion for demonstration of effectiveness than the herbal medication being used as a main therapy when it is an adjunct. Examples of adjunct treatment include utilizing plant sterols and atorvastatin to treat hypercholesterolemia, using traditional Chinese medicine herbs and corticosteroids for dermatitis, and using butterbur for migraine prophylaxis together with propranolol. Patients with attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder may utilize melatonin to aid in sleep in order to reduce the amount of insomnia brought on by the usage of methylphenidate. Of course, care should be taken to prevent patient damage from NHP-medication interactions when utilizing NHPs as a supplement to pharmacological treatment [5].

Pharmacodynamic or pharmacokinetic NHP-drug interactions may have complementary or antagonistic effects. In a pharmacodynamic interaction between chamomile and warfarin, the effects of one product are affected by the presence of the other, and a stable indicator of blood clotting, the INR, was elevated. The combined anticoagulatory actions of the two products, according to the authors, are what caused the impact. A pharmacokinetic interaction occurs when two products interact to impact one another's absorption, distribution, metabolism, or excretion. When taken concurrently, St. John's wort will lower the maximum plasma levels of the chemotherapeutic drug irinotecan, which is involved in pharmacokinetic interactions with

this herb. Sadly, there is still a lot to learn about how herbs and medications interact. The pharmacological characteristics of many plants and their possible interactions with pharmaceutical drugs are poorly understood. Choosing the theoretical relationships that will matter therapeutically is a difficulty that exists. It was recently made possible for doctors to quickly determine the possibility of a known herb-drug interaction. It's critical to note that this makes a distinction between NHP-drug interactions that have just been theorized about and those that have been verified in actual clinical situations [6].

Suggestions for Herbal Medicine Education Clinicians should take advantage of CME opportunities to refresh their knowledge of NHPs, which will improve their capacity to respond to NHP-related queries and foresee any herb-drug interactions. No physician can be expected to be aware of every conceivable interaction, but they should make an attempt to at least be aware of the most prevalent ones based on the products that the majority of their patient group uses. Universities with health science departments should be [7], [8] encouraged to create and implement an NHPs curriculum so that future healthcare professionals would feel more at ease and informed when talking to patients about NHPs. Thankfully, a few colleges that are a part of the Consortium of Academic Health Centers for Integrative Medicine have already embraced this strategy.

The Consortium's main goal is to advance concepts linked to integrative medicine in educational settings; this may be done through assisting in the development of integrative medicine curriculum, research, and prospective treatment modalities. The Consortium consists of institutions, among them Yale University, Johns Hopkins University, and Harvard Medical School.

Clinicians should be able to tackle some of the difficulties posed by the use of NHPs with the aid of more knowledge about NHPs. Doctors will have a better understanding of treatments that work and will be able to suggest alternatives to patients, enhancing patient autonomy and beneficence. Also, medical personnel will be better aware about the treatments that can be harmful to patients, allowing them to advise patients to steer clear of these harmful procedures [9], [10].

CONCLUSION

Important bioethical concepts of traditional medicine, such as beneficence, nonmalfeasance, and patient autonomy, are also relevant to CAM, including herbal remedies. Patients have the right to choose the course of their care, but this right is predicated on their physicians' ability to educate them enough about the conventional, complementary, and alternative therapy alternatives available to them. Clinicians must consider the risk-benefit ratio when advising patients on the use of NHPs, whether as the sole form of treatment or as a supplement to other forms of therapy, since the body of research surrounding their safety and effectiveness is expanding.

A fundamental barrier is the lack of in-depth understanding of NHP pharmacology and NHP-drug interactions, but new approaches are developing to support physicians and scientists in expanding their knowledge while improving patient care. Clinicians should foster respectful interactions where patients are aware that their preferences, values, and beliefs will be taken into account while making treatment choices in order to encourage complete disclosure. There are ethical issues and difficulties that must be resolved as NHPs gain popularity. The ethical use of herbal medicines will be addressed in a manner that encourages beneficence, nonmalfeasance, and patient autonomy with continuous research and careful attention to patient-centered treatment.

REFERENCES:

[1] B. Jahromi, I. Pirvulescu, K. D. Candido, and N. N. Knezevic, "Herbal medicine for pain management: Efficacy and drug interactions," *Pharmaceutics*. 2021. doi: 10.3390/pharmaceutics13020251.

[2] D. Silveira *et al.*, "COVID-19: Is There Evidence for the Use of Herbal Medicines as Adjuvant Symptomatic Therapy?," *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2020. doi: 10.3389/fphar.2020.581840.

[3] A. N. Welz, A. Emberger-Klein, and K. Menrad, "Why people use herbal medicine: Insights from a focus-group study in Germany," *BMC Complement. Altern. Med.*, 2018, doi: 10.1186/s12906-018-2160-6.

[4] X. An *et al.*, "The interaction between the gut Microbiota and herbal medicines," *Biomedicine and Pharmacotherapy*. 2019. doi: 10.1016/j.biopha.2019.109252.

[5] C. xiao Liu, "Overview on development of ASEAN traditional and herbal medicines," *Chinese Herbal Medicines*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.chmed.2021.09.002.

[6] Z. Wang and L. Yang, "Chinese herbal medicine: Fighting SARS-CoV-2 infection on all fronts," *Journal of Ethnopharmacology*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.jep.2021.113869.

[7] W. Liu, T. Ge, Z. Pan, Y. Leng, J. Lv, and B. Li, "The effects of herbal medicine on epilepsy," *Oncotarget*. 2017. doi: 10.18632/oncotarget.16801.

[8] M. El Hajj and L. Holst, "Herbal Medicine Use During Pregnancy: A Review of the Literature With a Special Focus on Sub-Saharan Africa," *Frontiers in Pharmacology*. 2020. doi: 10.3389/fphar.2020.00866.

[9] H. Kamarli Altun, M. S. Karacil Ermumcu, and N. Seremet Kurklu, "Evaluation of dietary supplement, functional food and herbal medicine use by dietitians during the COVID-19 pandemic," *Public Health Nutr.*, 2021, doi: 10.1017/S1368980020005297.

[10] L. Ang, E. Song, H. W. Lee, and M. S. Lee, "Herbal medicine for the treatment of coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19): A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials," *Journal of Clinical Medicine*. 2020. doi: 10.3390/jcm9051583.

CHAPTER 25

OBSTACLES TO INCLUDING HERBAL TREATMENT IN EVIDENCE-BASED MEDICAL PRACTICE

Vaibhav Rastogi, Associate Professor
College of Pharmacy, Teerthanker Mahaveer University, Moradabad, Uttar Pradesh, India
Email Id- vaib.asa@gmail.com

ABSTRACT:

One of the following three approaches may be used to combine herbal medicine with other traditional forms of medicine: First, it might be included as a crucial component of a nation's official health care system, each of which would be individually acknowledged as acceptable types of medical treatment within the same framework. Second, it may be used in conjunction with contemporary medicine by distinct healthcare professionals. Finally, ancient and contemporary medical practices may be combined as two separate fields of medical research, eventually combining parts of both to create a new branch. For a variety of reasons, including scientific, cultural, educational, and legal ones, it is difficult to integrate traditional medical modalities like herbal medicine into contemporary or EBM through either the second or third approach of health care integration.

KEYWORDS:

Administration, Healthcare, Herbal Therapy, Phytomedicine, Pharmaceutically.

INTRODUCTION

The People's Republic of China has long defended its system of medical education, which mandates that practitioners of modern medicine complete some official training in traditional Chinese medicine in order to be familiar with appropriate TCM techniques while administering Western medications. Nevertheless, there isn't enough evidence to support its effective use in clinical practice. The widespread use of herbal medicine as complementary and alternative medicine or phytomedicine in Western nations like the United States, Australia, Canada, and members of the European Union in the past two to three decades has resulted in a multinational, multibillion-dollar industry, professional and trade organizations, national and international practice and research conferences, and the establishment of specialized integrated medicine practices and clinics. These changes have led to continuous worldwide debates over the last several years about the integration of CAM medicine, particularly herbal remedies, into contemporary medicine. The great majority of herbal medicines, however, have not yet been completely shown to be effective or safe using an evidence-based methodology. Additionally, other difficulties, such as scientific, cultural, educational, socioeconomic, and legal, need to be addressed. In this chapter, we analyze the present situation and important scientific concerns or aspects that impact the integration of herbal medicine into evidence-based medical care [1].

Current Status and Key Problems with Herbal Medicine Integration in Evidence-Based Medical Therapy

In addition to being used alone or in conjunction with modern treatment, herbal medicine is increasingly employed to improve overall health and well-being. According to a recent demographic survey on individuals from the Australian state of Victoria, about % of adults took herbal medication in the years [2]. Similarly, according to the National Health Interview Survey, which questioned ,4 members of the civilian noninstitutionalized population of the

United States, around one in five or an estimated .2 million persons took herbs and supplements in the country. The Consortium of Academic Health Centers for Integrative Medicine, which was founded in, encompasses academic health facilities in the US and Canada. The Consortium has been striving to set standards for research in integrative medicine and techniques for incorporating complementary and alternative medicine expertise, such as herbal medicines, into medical school curriculum. Thousands of TM and other CAM herbal medicines are now offered as medicinal agents across the globe. To ascertain their effectiveness and/or safety, however, few of these products have been put through randomized clinical trials in accordance with the International Conference on Harmonization Good Clinical Practice Guidelines [3].

The traditional medicinal claims of herbal remedies have often been validated by a number of nonclinical in vitro and in vivo research. There aren't any systematic evaluations of the research methods or the analysis and verification of the data, however. Additionally, due to species differences or other mitigating circumstances, the translation of an in vitro and/or in vivo biological/pharmacological effect of an herbal medicine to human therapeutic use may not be successful. For example, the simple attribute of a biological or clinical outcome by the name of the mother herb, while neglecting the type of plant extract, methods of processing, and pharmaceutical formulation, which invariably contain varying content and proportions. The quality of the herbal products may influence the clinical results in addition to the preclinical biological or pharmacological problems, which can effect their successful incorporation into EBM. The quality of herbal medicines might vary greatly depending on both internal and external circumstances. Examples of intrinsic characteristics that might impact the qualitative and quantitative accumulation of the physiologically or pharmacologically active chemical elements generated and/or accumulated in the plant include species differences, organ specialization, diurnal and seasonal fluctuations, and more. Environmental variables, cultivation and field collecting procedures, postharvest handling, storage, manufacture, unintentional contamination, substitution, and purposeful adulteration are examples of extrinsic factors influencing the quality of herbal medicines [4], [5].

DISCUSSION

The People's Republic of China has long defended its system of medical education, which mandates that practitioners of modern medicine complete some official training in traditional Chinese medicine in order to be familiar with appropriate TCM techniques while administering Western medications. Nevertheless, there isn't enough evidence to support its effective use in clinical practice. The widespread use of herbal medicine as complementary and alternative medicine or phytomedicine in Western nations like the United States, Australia, Canada, and members of the European Union in the past two to three decades has resulted in a multinational, multibillion-dollar industry, professional and trade organizations, national and international practice and research conferences, and the establishment of specialized integrated medicine practices and clinics. These changes have led to continuous worldwide debates over the last several years about the integration of CAM medicine, particularly herbal remedies, into contemporary medicine. The great majority of herbal medicines, however, have not yet been completely shown to be effective or safe using an evidence-based methodology. Additionally, other difficulties, such as scientific, cultural, educational, socioeconomic, and legal, need to be addressed. In this chapter, we analyze the present situation and important scientific concerns or aspects that impact the integration of herbal medicine into evidence-based medical care[6]. [7], [8].

The traditional medicinal claims of herbal remedies have often been validated by a number of nonclinical in vitro and in vivo research. There aren't any systematic evaluations of the research methods or the analysis and verification of the data, however. Additionally, due to species

differences or other mitigating circumstances, the translation of an in vitro and/or in vivo biological/pharmacological effect of a herbal medicine to human therapeutic use may not be successful. For example, the simple attribute of a biological or clinical outcome by the name of the mother herb, while neglecting the type of plant extract, methods of processing, and pharmaceutical formulation, which invariably contain varying content and proportions of . The quality of the herbal products may influence the clinical results in addition to the preclinical biological or pharmacological problems, which can affect their successful incorporation into EBM.

CONCLUSION

The quality of herbal medicines might vary greatly depending on both internal and external circumstances. Examples of intrinsic characteristics that might impact the qualitative and quantitative accumulation of the physiologically or pharmacologically active chemical elements generated and/or accumulated in the plant include species differences, organ specialization, diurnal and seasonal fluctuations, and more. Environmental variables, cultivation and field collecting procedures, postharvest handling, storage, manufacture, unintentional contamination, substitution, and purposeful adulteration are examples of extrinsic factors influencing the quality of herbal medicines [9], [10].

REFERENCES:

[1] W. A. Khairy, H. A. Nasser, M. D. Sarhan, A. A. El Shamy, and Y. S. Galal, “Prevalence and predictors of self-medication with antifungal drugs and herbal products among university students: A cross-sectional study from egypt,” *Risk Manag. Healthc. Policy*, 2021, doi: 10.2147/RMHP.S308400.

[2] P. L. Wang and A. Kaneko, “Introduction to Kampo medicine for dental treatment — Oral pharmacotherapy that utilizes the advantages of Western and Kampo medicines,” *Japanese Dental Science Review*. 2018. doi: 10.1016/j.jdsr.2018.03.004.

[3] W. T. Chen, R. M. Tang, Y. Huang, Y. P. Pan, S. W. Wang, and G. Y. Wang, “Different Chinese herbal medicine therapy for idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura: A protocol for systematic review and Bayesian network meta-analysis,” *Medicine (United States)*. 2021. doi: 10.1097/MD.0000000000025341.

[4] J. Ren *et al.*, “Is traditional Chinese medicine recommended in Western medicine clinical practice guidelines in China? A systematic analysis,” *BMJ Open*, 2015, doi: 10.1136/bmjopen-2014-006572.

[5] Y. J. Lee *et al.*, “Survey of integrative lumbar spinal stenosis treatment in Korean medicine doctors: Preliminary data for clinical practice guidelines,” *BMC Complement. Altern. Med.*, 2017, doi: 10.1186/s12906-017-1942-6.

[6] N. Corp and B. Pendry, “The role of Western herbal medicine in the treatment of gout,” *J. Herb. Med.*, 2013, doi: 10.1016/j.hermed.2013.08.002.

[7] T. Tastemel Ozturk *et al.*, “Predictors for the use of herbal and dietary supplements in children and adolescents with kidney and urinary tract diseases,” *Eur. J. Pediatr.*, 2021, doi: 10.1007/s00431-020-03757-7.

[8] J. Schulenburg, “Considerations for complementary and alternative interventions for pain,” *AORN J.*, 2015, doi: 10.1016/j.aorn.2015.01.013.

[9] K. Bone and S. Mills, *Principles and practice of phytotherapy: Modern herbal medicine*. 2012. doi: 10.1016/C2009-0-48725-7.

[10] T. Efferth, A. long Xu, R. Damiescu, M. Banerjee, N. W. Paul, and D. Y. W. Lee, "Can eastern wisdom resolve western epidemics? Traditional Chinese medicine therapies and the opioid crisis," *Journal of Integrative Medicine*. 2021. doi: 10.1016/j.joim.2021.03.006.